

Draft

## Add diagrams to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add diagrams to a Freeform board.

### Create a diagram

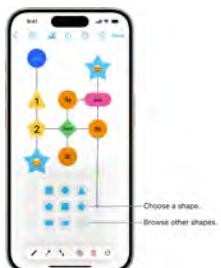
You can easily create a connected diagram, such as a flowchart, by using connectors and the shape picker in Freeform.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , tap View Options, then tap Show Connectors.



4. Begin your diagram by tapping , , or  to add an item.
5. Drag a connector arrow to where you want the next part of your diagram. When you let go, a small menu of shapes opens. Tap to select the next shape you want to add.

(Tap  to browse other shapes.)



6. Tap  when you're finished diagramming.

You don't see connector arrows when you select a line or multiple items.

Draft

**Tip:** You can quickly add equally spaced, aligned shapes with connectors. Tap to select a shape, then touch and hold a connector arrow. As you hold, a preview of the shape and line appears. When you let go, the shape and line are added to the board.

## Connect two items with a line

After you add two items to a Freeform board, you can add a line between them.

1. Select two items on your board.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Add Connection Line.
  - Tap , then tap .

## Change connection points

After you add a connection line to a diagram on a Freeform board, you can change how it connects.

1. Tap to select a connection line, then drag one of its endpoints (the blue dots).
2. Attach the endpoint to another item on the board at a new connection point.

You can attach a line to an item or (for some object types) near it. A filled circle appears when a connection is possible.

# Add images, scans, links, and other files to a Freeform board on iPhone

You can add any photo or video to a Freeform board, or take a new one with your iPhone camera. You can also add any kind of file to your board by scanning, linking, or inserting it.



## Add a photo, video, sticker, link, or other file

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.

3. Do one of the following: Draft

- Copy the item to your Clipboard, tap an empty space, then, when a menu appears, tap Paste.
- Tap , then tap an option.

4. Tap  when you're finished.

Double-tap any media item—photo, video, or other file—to preview it.

**Note:** You can insert files saved on your iPhone or in iCloud Drive. For most file types, Freeform makes a copy of the inserted file. When you add a link to a collaborative [Keynote presentation](#), [Numbers spreadsheet](#), or [Pages document](#), participants in your Freeform board can tap the card to move to the shared file in iCloud. (If you want others to be able to collaborate on the file, you must save it in iCloud.)

## Scan and add a document

You can scan a paper document and add it to your board as a PDF without leaving Freeform.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , then tap Scan Document.
4. Position the document so that it appears on the screen, then tap  or press a volume button.
5. Drag the corners to select the area you want in the scanned document, then tap Keep Scan.
6. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

A card with an image of the first page of your scan appears on your board.

**Tip:** To save your scan to iCloud Drive or on your iPhone, select the card, tap , then tap Save to Files.

## Format a photo or video

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board with a photo or video in it.

3. Tap a photo or video to open its **Formatting tools** near the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

- *Crop or mask the photo:* Tap .
- *Remove the photo's background:* Tap , then tap Remove Background. If the background of the photo can't be made transparent, Remove Background isn't available.
- **Tip:** You can also paste an image without a background. See [Lift a subject from the photo or video background](#).
- *Add a shadow, round the corners, add a description, and more:* Tap ..., then choose an option.
- *Replace the photo or video:* Select the photo or video, tap  or , tap Replace, then select a replacement.
- *Preview the photo or video:* Tap , or double-tap the photo or video.

To preview a movie in full screen, double-tap it.

## Put an image inside a shape

You can use a shape as a mask or frame for an image. For example, you can put your photo inside a circle.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. [Add a photo or other image to the board](#).
4. Tap , then choose a shape.
5. Position the shape over the image, then select both it and the image. (See [Select, align, and group multiple items on a board](#).)
6. Tap ... in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Mask with Shape.

Or drag an image onto a shape to use it as a frame.

To remove it from the shape, select the masked image, tap ... in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Reset Mask.

**Tip:** To add a photo, video, file, or link to a Freeform board from supported apps (such as Notes, Photos, Safari, and more), select it and tap  in the other app, tap the Freeform app icon, then tap New Board or the name of an existing board. (If you want others to be able to collaborate on a file, you must save it in iCloud.)

## Apply consistent styles and formatting in Freeform on iPhone

When you want the text in your sticky notes, shapes, or text boxes to have a consistent look in Freeform—for example, font, size, and color—you can copy the style from one item and paste it in another. You can also save styles.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap an item on a board and make any adjustments to the formatting—so it has the style you want to copy.
3. When you have an item that's formatted in a style you like, tap it to show its formatting tools.

4. Tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Style, then tap Copy Style.
5. Tap to select and show the formatting tools for an item whose style you want to change.
6. Tap , tap Style, then tap Paste Style.

Depending on the item you're pasting a style into, fonts, line weight, or color are matched.

For linked or placed files, pasted styles update corners and shadows.

**Tip:** If you like the style of an item, you can save its style. Then, every time you add another item like that to your board, it uses that saved style. Tap to select the text box, tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Style, then choose Save as Insert Style.

## Position items on a Freeform board on iPhone

You can move, rotate, or resize items on your Freeform board. You can align, distribute, or group them, and move them to the background or foreground. You can also lock items when you want to prevent any further changes.

### Move, rotate, or resize an item

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.

2. Open a board, select an item you want to position by tapping it, then do any of the following:

- *Reposition it:* Drag from the center of the item.
- *Move it in a straight line:* To constrain an item's movement horizontally, vertically, or diagonally, drag the item with one finger while you use another finger to touch and hold anywhere on the board.



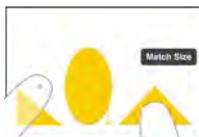
- *Rotate it:* Place two fingers on the item, then turn your hand in the direction you want to rotate it.



- *Put it in the background or foreground:* Tap ⋮ in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Back or Front.
- *Resize it:* Drag a blue dot.

In text boxes, drag a green dot to resize both the box and the text within it.

- *Match its size to another item:* Start resizing, then use a second finger to touch and hold the item whose size you want to match. When the words Match Size appear, lift both your fingers at the same time.



## Select, align, and group multiple items on a board

After you add items to a Freeform board, you can select and align multiple items relative to one another. You can also group several items to more easily move, rotate, or resize them as a single unit.



1. Go to the Freeform app on your iPhone.

2. [Open a board](#), then select multiple items by doing one of the following:

- Touch and hold an item on your board, then, with another finger, tap other items.



- Touch and hold the canvas, then drag the box that appears around the items you want to select.



- Tap an empty space on the canvas, then tap Select Objects. Tap each item you want to select. Tap the item again if you want to deselect it.

3. Move, rotate, or resize the selected items, or tap , then tap an alignment option or Group.

Some items—such as 3D objects—can't be grouped.

To make it easier to arrange items, you can [turn on the background dot grid](#) and automatically [align items](#) to it.

## Lock an item on a board

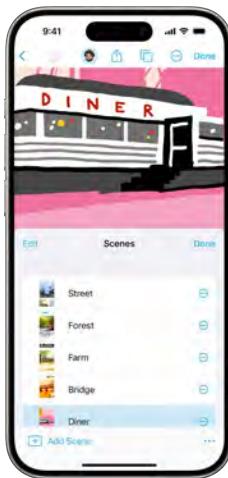
After you add an item to a Freeform board, you can lock it so you don't inadvertently move, modify, or delete it. For example, you might lock one or more text boxes to serve as headings. (This could help set off areas on a board where participants can share items.)

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#), then tap a drawing, shape, text box, or other item on your board to select it.
3. Tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Lock.

**Tip:** When you want to define a workspace for your participants (rather than having a wide open canvas), try adding a [large rectangle shape](#). Select the shape, tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, tap Back, then lock it.

## Navigate and present scenes in your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can save scenes—saved views of your board—to organize your boards into sections, then quickly navigate and present those parts of your board to others. Scenes let you identify and label content so you can present your board, section by section, and rearrange the order in which you present your board. You can also use scenes to identify the parts of your board you want to print or export as a PDF.



## Save scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#) with content.
3. Zoom and scroll until you frame the part of your board you want on the screen for your first scene.
4. Tap , then tap Add Scene.

The Scene Navigator opens at the bottom of your board.

5. Repeat these steps until you capture all the scenes you want: Frame your next scene, tap  in the Scene Navigator or tap , then tap Add Scene.

**Tip:** Don't worry about saving scenes in order. You can edit their sequence after you capture them.

## Navigate scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#) with saved scenes.
3. Tap , tap Scene Navigator, then do any of the following:
  - Tap , then tap the scene you want to go to.
  - Tap < and > to move between scenes.

**Note:** What appears depends on what device someone uses to view the board and how it's positioned. For example, for iPhone and iPad, portrait or landscape orientation may affect how the scene is framed.

## Edit scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#) with saved scenes.
3. Tap , tap Scene Navigator, then tap .

#### 4. Tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Change the name of a scene:* Enter a new name, then tap Done.
- *Reframe a scene:* Tap ..., then tap Replace Scene.
- *Rearrange the view order:* Touch and hold ≡, then drag the scene up or down.
- *Delete a scene:* Tap ✖.

### Print or export all scenes

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#) with saved scenes.
3. Tap ..., then do one of the following:
  - Tap Print, tap Scenes, then tap Print.
  - Tap Export as PDF, tap Scenes, then choose how you want to share it or tap Save to Files.

**Tip:** Printed and exported scenes default to the size of the device you're on. To print as the scenes were originally framed, tap Freeform Options, then select Capturing Device.

### Print or export one scene

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. [Open a board](#) with saved scenes.
3. Tap ..., then tap Scene Navigator.
4. Tap ≡, touch and hold a scene name, then do one of the following:
  - Tap Print Scene, then tap Print.
  - Tap Export Scene as PDF, then either choose how you want to share it or tap Save to Files.

**Tip:** If you're already in the Scene Navigator, you can tap ... next to any scene you want to print or export.

All collaborators can access any scenes saved in a board.

## Send a copy or PDF of a Freeform board on iPhone

You can send a link to a copy of a Freeform board, so others can download the copy and add it to their boards—if you are [signed in to your Apple Account](#). You can also export your Freeform board as a PDF to send a copy of it to others.

### Send a copy of a board

Send a copy of your board to anyone with just a link. They can take the copy of the board and make it their own. You must be online and signed in to iCloud to send a copy of the board.

1. Go to the Freeform app 📱 on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following: Draft

- *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the board you want to share, then tap Share.
- *From inside a board:* Tap .

3. Tap the pop-up menu under the board name, choose Send Copy, then tap one of the following:

- *Copy iCloud Link:* The link is copied to your clipboard. You can then paste it anywhere you like.
- *Any contact or app icon:* Follow the onscreen instructions.

You can send this link to as many recipients as you like. Anyone with the link can download the copy within 30 days. When browsing for the board, recipients can find it in All Boards, not the Shared section. (Shared is only for boards you're collaborating on.)

If you'd like to share your board collaboratively—so you can all see one another's updates— see [Share Freeform boards and collaborate](#).

Each new link sends a copy of the board at the time you created the link. When you send someone a copy, the link opens a new board. Changes on your board don't appear on their board, and anything others change doesn't affect yours.

**Note:** Sending a copy doesn't change who has access to the original board. See [Manage sharing settings](#) to change access to a board.

## Send a PDF of a board

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. In the board you want to send, tap , tap Export as PDF.

If you saved scenes in your board, choose to export one of the following:

- *The entire board as a single page:* Tap Board.
- *One scene per page:* Tap Scenes.

4. Choose how you want to send the PDF, such as in Messages or Mail, then follow the onscreen instructions.

People and groups you recently communicated with appear as icons. Tap one to send the board to them.

You can also export a board as a PDF while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, tap Share, then tap Export as PDF.

**Tip:** To send a PNG of your board, [take a screenshot](#), then [share it](#) from the Photos app. You can also select and copy items you want to share and then paste them into other apps (Mail or Files, for example) as a PNG.

## Print a Freeform board on iPhone

You can print a Freeform board.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.

2. Open the board you want to print, ..., then tap Print.

If you saved scenes in your board, choose to print one of the following:

- *The entire board as a single page:* Tap Board.
- *One scene per page:* Tap Scenes.

## Share Freeform boards and collaborate on iPhone

You can invite people to collaborate on a Freeform board in iCloud, and everyone sees the latest changes when they're online and [signed in to their Apple Account](#). To make sure the board is accessible to all, you can add descriptions for visual items.



### Invite others to collaborate on a board

When you collaborate with others on a shared Freeform board, you can see edits as others make them. Changes are saved in iCloud, so everyone with access to the board sees the latest version whenever they open it.

*Note:* Boards are stored only in the iCloud account of the owner. The iCloud storage of participants isn't affected by items in a board.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *While browsing All Boards:* Touch and hold the board you want to share, then tap Share.
  - *From inside a board:* Open the board you want to share (or tap  to start a new one), then tap .
3. The current sharing setting is described below the name of the board, such as "Only invited people can edit." Tap the setting to change it. See [Manage sharing settings](#).

*Note:* If you want to be the only one who can invite others, select "Only invited people" and turn off "Allow others to invite" (green is on).

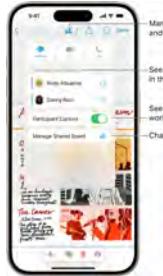
4. Choose how you want to share the board—such as in Messages or Mail—or tap the icon of anyone you communicated with recently to share with them.

Draft  
You can add people after you start sharing a board. Tap , tap Manage Shared Board, then tap Share With More People. Depending on the settings of others in Messages,  may change appearance.

**Note:** To edit or view the board, everyone you share with must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) with iOS 16.2, iPadOS 16.2, macOS 13.1, or later. To collaborate using Messages, you and anyone you invite must also [turn on iMessage](#).

## View others in a board

You can see where others are working on your board in real time or follow along while another participant moves in a board. For example, if you're following someone who's presenting their design proposal on a Freeform board, you can see where they are on the board and what they see.



1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the shared board where you want to see others at work, then tap .
3. Turn on Participant Cursors if the setting is off.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Jump to where they're working:* Tap the name of a participant. The color next to the participant's name matches the color marking their place on the board.
  - *Follow their board view as they work or present:* Tap ... next to the name of a participant, then tap Follow Along. Or you can just tap the person's avatar wherever they are on the board, then tap Follow. Anything you'd selected before entering the mode is deselected. A border (with a color matching the cursor of the person you're following) frames what they see on the board.

Both you and the presenter you're following need to be online.

When you're following along, you can't select anything on the board, and the zoom level is based on the other person's view.

To stop following along, tap Stop in the top-right corner—or just scroll, zoom, or edit.

**Note:** Others working with you on the board can only undo and redo their own changes while the board is open. Use  to move through the changes you made on your own iPhone. To redo a change after you undo it, touch and hold , then tap Redo.

## Add accessibility descriptions

You can add a description of your visual content to any item on your board. That way, people who use assistive technology such as [VoiceOver](#) can hear the visual content described aloud. (Descriptions aren't visible on the board itself.)

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Open the board where you want to add accessibility descriptions.
3. Tap to select the item you want to describe, tap  in the formatting tools at the bottom, then tap Description.
4. Enter a description of the visual content, then tap .
5. To hear the description, [turn on VoiceOver](#), then tap the item.

## Stop sharing or collaborating

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the board you want to stop sharing or collaborating on.
3. Tap , then tap Manage Shared Board.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Remove people:* Tap the name of the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
  - *Remove yourself from someone else's board:* Tap your name, then tap Remove Me.
  - *Stop sharing with everyone:* Tap Stop Sharing, then tap Stop Sharing.

When you choose this option, the board no longer appears on the devices of the other participants, even though you still have access to it.

You can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you start sharing a board. See [Manage sharing settings](#).

To use the collaboration features fully, all participants must be online, [signed in to their Apple Account](#), have Freeform turned on in iCloud (see [Set up iCloud for Freeform on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide), and have [set up two-factor authentication](#).

## Search your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can search all your Freeform boards for text in handwriting, sticky notes, text boxes, shapes, and filenames.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Search within a board:* Tap  at the top, then tap Find.
  - *Search all boards:* Tap the search field at the top of the All Boards screen. Any board that contains the text appears in the search results.  
(If you're in a board, tap  to access Search in All Boards.)

## Delete and recover your Freeform boards on iPhone

You can remove Freeform boards you no longer need. You can also recover deleted boards you want to keep.

### Delete a board

Draft

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap  at the top, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to delete.  
(If you're in a board, tap  to browse All Boards.)
3. Tap Delete at the bottom-right corner of the screen.

You can also touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the board, then tap Delete.

If you're the *owner* of a board and you delete it, it no longer appears on anyone's devices.

If you're a *participant* in a shared board and you delete it, it no longer appears on your devices, but others can still access it.

## Recover a recently deleted board

If you change your mind about deleting a board, you can recover it.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. While browsing All Boards, tap , then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Recover a board:* Touch and hold the thumbnail or name of the recently deleted board, then tap Recover.
  - *Recover several boards:* Tap  at the top, tap Select, then tap the boards you want to recover. Tap Recover at the bottom of the screen.

Deleted boards remain in Recently Deleted for 30 days.

If you were the *owner* of a *shared* board that you deleted, it no longer appears on anyone's device, and you have to reshare it after recovering it.

If you delete a board you don't own, you may be able to access it again with the invitation link.

## Permanently remove a recently deleted board

After deleting a board, you can permanently remove it.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. While browsing Recently Deleted, touch and hold the board, tap Delete, then tap Delete.

# Change your Freeform settings on iPhone

You can customize the settings for the Freeform app.

## Turn the background dot grid on or off

You can show a grid of gray dots on your board, which allows you to see more easily whether items line up.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a board, or tap  to start a new one.
3. Tap , tap View Options, then tap Hide Grid or Show Grid.

## Align items to the background grid

Draft

Draft  
You can make edges and points align to the nearest dot on the grid as you resize or move an item.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Turn on Snap to Grid.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap  ..., then tap Alignment Settings, then tap Snap to Grid.

## Turn alignment guides on or off

You can use alignment guides to help you place items more precisely. When guides are on, they appear as you drag an item on a board and it aligns with another item.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Tap on or off any of the following:
  - *Center Guides*: These appear when the midpoints of items align.
  - *Edge Guides*: These appear when the edges of items align.
  - *Spacing Guides*: These appear when three or more items are equally spaced in a line.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap  ..., then turn on the guides you want to use. Or turn them off if you don't want them appearing as you move items near one another on the board.

## Get math hints

You can choose how you want your iPhone to respond to the math problems you enter.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Freeform.
3. Tap Math Results, then select one of the following:
  - *If you want problems to be solved automatically*: Choose Insert Results. (The answer appears in writing that matches your own.)
  - *If you want suggestions to appear*: Choose Suggest Results. (A Solve button appears that, when tapped, adds the answer in writing that matches your own.)
  - *If you don't want to see math results*: Choose Off.

You can also access these settings when you're working in a board. Tap  ..., then tap Math Results.

## Manage sharing settings

You can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you start sharing a board.

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the board whose sharing settings you want to change.

A list of participants appears, showing who is working in the board.

4. Tap Manage Shared Board, then do any of the following:

- *Lock the board for edits:* Tap Share Options, then tap "View only."
- Note:* If you don't want participants to be able to invite others, select "Only people you invite" and "Only you can add people."
- *Give editing access:* Tap Share Options, then tap "Can make changes."
- *Change access and permissions individually:* Tap a participant's name, then adjust their settings.
- *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Options, tap "Anyone with the link," tap <, then tap Copy Link.

*Note:* Anyone can copy the link to send to others, but if you select "Only people you invite," then only those invited to open the board can use the link. If you don't want participants to be able to invite others, select "Only people you invite" and "Only you can add people."

**Tip:** You can also manage any board you previously shared while browsing All Boards. Touch and hold its thumbnail or name, then tap Manage Shared Board.

### Store your Freeform boards in iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then turn on Freeform.

To back up without using iCloud, see the Apple Support article [About encrypted backups on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

### Sort your boards

1. Go to the Freeform app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap ..., then do any of the following:
  - *View more boards at the same time (with smaller thumbnails):* Tap List.
  - *List boards alphabetically (instead of by most recently updated):* Tap Sort by Name.
  - *Categorize boards by how long ago they were last opened:* When viewing All Boards, tap Sort by Date, then tap Use Groups.
  - *Categorize boards by board owner:* When viewing Shared boards, tap Use Groups.

## Games

### Get started with the Apple Games app on iPhone

The Apple Games app is your central hub for the games you enjoy and the friends you play them with. To use the app, make sure you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) in both Game Center and the App Store.

Use the Apple Games app to keep track of what you're playing, discover new games, and stay connected with friends. It brings together your gameplay, highlights, and recommendations in one convenient place.

## Discover new games

Find recommendations tailored to your preferences and see what games your friends are playing. Tap Home, then tap a game to learn more, download it, or jump right in if you already have it installed.

## Play together

Join time-limited games to compete with friends or players around the world. Tap Play Together, then choose Challenges or Multiplayer.

## Manage your library

Tap the Library tab to access your downloaded games, track achievements, and filter your collection.

## View your profile and achievements

Tap your profile picture in the corner of the screen to see your Game Center achievements, friends list, and activity. You can also customize your nickname and avatar.

Want to learn more?

- [Find and download games](#)
- [Play together in the Apple Games app](#)
- [Manage your game library](#)

# Set up your Game Center profile in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can personalize your Game Center profile, manage who can connect with you, and adjust game-related settings.

*Note:* To use the Apple Games app, make sure you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

## Set up your Game Center profile in the Apple Games app

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Continue, then tap Continue again.

### 3. Do the following to customize your player profile:

- *Choose your avatar:* Tap , then select an avatar.
- *Create a nickname:* To choose a nickname that your friends will see when you play games together, tap Nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions.
- *Choose who can see your game activity:* Tap an option.

### 4. Tap Continue.

You can also set up your Game Center profile by going to the Settings app , then tapping Game Center. Turn on Game Center, then customize your player profile.

## Edit your Game Center profile in the Apple Games app

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your profile picture in the top-right corner, then tap Edit Profile.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Edit your avatar:* Tap , then select an avatar.
  - *Edit your nickname:* Tap your current nickname, then enter a name or choose one of the suggestions.
4. When you're finished, tap .

You can also edit your Game Center profile by going to the Settings app , tapping Game Center, then tapping Customize Profile.

## Manage Game Center settings

You can view friends, accept or decline requests, and manage privacy settings.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Game Center, then do any of the following:
  - *View friends:* Tap All Friends.
  - *Accept or decline friend requests:* Tap Friend Requests.
  - *Allow or disallow apps to access your list of Game Center friends:* Tap Share Friends List.
  - *Allow Game Center friends to find you with the email and phone number associated with your Apple Account:* Turn on Help Friends Find You.
  - *Manage activity sharing:* Choose Everyone, Friends Only, or Only You to specify who can see your profile, achievement progress, leaderboard updates, and recently played games.
  - *Allow invitations from nearby players:* Turn on Nearby Players to allow nearby Game Center players in the same game to invite you to a multiplayer game over Wi-Fi or Bluetooth®.
  - *Sign out of Game Center:* Tap Sign Out.

## Manage Game Center restrictions

You can set Game Center restrictions to create a safer, more controlled gaming experience by limiting features like friend requests, multiplayer games, and in-app purchases.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Screen Time, tap Content & Privacy Restrictions, then turn on Content & Privacy Restrictions.
3. Tap App Store, Media, Web & Games, scroll down to Game Center, then set any of the following restrictions:
  - Multiplayer Games
  - Adding Friends
  - Connect with Friends
  - Screen Recording
  - Nearby Multiplayer
  - Private Messaging
  - Profile Privacy Changes
  - Avatar & Nickname Changes

## Find and download games in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can find your next game across dozens of categories including action, adventure, racing, puzzles, and more.

*Note:* Game Center, [Apple Arcade](#), and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#). The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article [Apple Arcade game availability across devices](#).

### Browse or search for games

You can browse, search for specific games, and see details such as ratings, reviews, and supported languages.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *To explore new releases, see top charts, get personalized suggestions:* Tap the Home tab.
  - *To view the curated collection of premium games from Apple Arcade (subscription required) without ads or in-app purchases:* Tap Arcade.
  - *To search or browse:* Tap , enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard or browse by category.

3. Tap a game to see the following information and more:  
Draft

- Screenshots or previews
- Ratings
- Supported languages
- Game Center and game controller support
- Compatibility with other Apple devices
- File size
- Leaderboards
- Achievements

To see additional information like reviews and privacy information, tap [View in App Store](#).

## Buy and download a game

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the game you want, then tap the price. If the game is free, tap [Get](#).  
  
If you see  instead of Get or the price, you purchased this game before. Tap  to download it again for free.
3. If required, authenticate with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete your purchase.

Purchases are made with the [payment method](#) associated with your Apple Account.

## Explore Apple Arcade in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can subscribe to Apple Arcade to enjoy unlimited access to a curated collection of games on [iPhone, iPad, Mac, and Apple TV](#).

You can subscribe to Apple Arcade or to Apple One, which includes Apple Arcade and other services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

*Note:* Apple Arcade and Apple One aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#). The availability of Apple Arcade games across devices varies based on hardware and software compatibility. Not all Apple Arcade games are available on Mac and Apple TV. Some content may not be available in all areas. See the Apple Support article [Apple Arcade game availability across devices](#).

## Subscribe to Apple Arcade

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Arcade, then tap the subscription button.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

## Share Apple Arcade with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Arcade or [Apple One](#), you can use [Family Sharing](#) to share Apple Arcade with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple Arcade is available to them the first time they open the Apple Games app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple Arcade or Apple One, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

**Note:** To stop sharing Apple Arcade with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave the family group](#), or (if you're the family group organizer) stop using Family Sharing.

## Play Apple Arcade games on your Apple devices

If you subscribe to Apple Arcade, you can play and access your game progress on every [compatible device](#) where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#). See the Apple Support article [Access your Apple Arcade gameplay data on all of your devices](#).

## Change or cancel your Apple Arcade subscription

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap Subscriptions.
3. Tap Apple Arcade, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you cancel your subscription, you can't play any Apple Arcade games, even if you downloaded them to your device.

You can resubscribe to play Apple Arcade games again and regain access to your gameplay data. If you wait too long, some of your gameplay data may not be supported after you resubscribe.

## Play together in the Apple Games app on iPhone

With the Apple Games app, you can send friend requests, compete on leaderboards, and play with friends during a FaceTime call. You can use Game Center to access supported games across all your Apple devices.

### Add friends in the Apple Games app

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Play Together, then tap Add Friends.
3. Find a contact by entering their name, then tap Invite.
4. Tap  to send the invitation using the Messages app.

You can also add a friend in the Contacts app. Open their contact card, then tap Add Friend on Game Center.

### Respond to friend requests

If you get a friend request from a contact in the Apple Games app, there are a number of ways you can respond:

- Recipients can respond to friend requests in any of the following ways:
  - In the Messages app, tap the friend request link.
  - In the Apple Games app, tap your profile picture, then tap Friend Requests
  - In the Settings app, go to Game Center, then tap Friend Requests.

## Get friend suggestions and see what they're playing

You can see your friends' shared gaming history, compare achievements, and send friends invite links and party codes.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Play Together.
3. In Friends & Groups, scroll down to see your friends' recent activity.

You can also see your friends' profiles and recent activity by going to the Settings app  > Game Center > All Friends.

## Challenge friends in the Apple Games app

In supported games with Game Center leaderboards, you can create a challenge to compete with friends for a high score or specific goal. Challenges create a shared competition within your group, turning single-player games into friendly showdowns. You choose the game, select friends to invite, and track everyone's results as they complete the challenge.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Play Together, then tap Challenges.
3. Tap a game, then choose any of the following options:
  - *Number of tries:* Tap 1 Try, 3 Tries, or Unlimited.
  - *Challenge duration:* Tap 1 Day, 3 Days, or 1 Week.
  - *Add Players:* Tap Players, search for a Contact or a friend's Game Center nickname, tap the player, then tap Continue.
4. Tap Start.

To leave a Challenge, tap  the game, tap , tap Leave Challenge, then tap Leave Challenge again.

## Play with or against friends in real time

In supported games, you can join multiplayer games directly from the Apple Games app and team up or compete against friends in real-time.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Play Together, then tap Multiplayer.
3. Tap a game, search for a Contact or a friend's Game Center nickname, then tap the player.
4. Tap Invite.

The game will open in Game Mode.

To leave a Multiplayer game, [open the App Switcher](#), swipe right to find the game, then tap the game, then swipe up on the game.

## Play games with friends using SharePlay<sup>Draft</sup>

You can find and download a Game Center multiplayer game in the App Store and play with friends while on a FaceTime call.

During the call, open a supported multiplayer game, tap Start SharePlay, then follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Use SharePlay to watch, listen, and play together](#).

## Use AirDrop to invite people to a multiplayer game

You can use AirDrop to invite nearby friends to multiplayer games that support Game Center.

1. Open the game you want to play on your iPhone.
2. Navigate to the screen where you invite friends.
3. Hold the display of your iPhone a few centimeters from the top of the other person's iPhone or Apple Watch.  
A glow emerges from both devices to indicate a connection is being made.
4. Continue holding your devices near each other until the game appears on the other person's screen.

## Report a user or remove a friend

You can report a user for cheating, an inappropriate picture or nickname, or another problem. You can also remove someone from your Friends list.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your profile picture in the top-right, then tap All Friends.
3. Tap the friend you want to report or remove, tap , then choose Report or Remove Friend.

# View and manage your game library in the Apple Games app on iPhone

In the Apple Games app, you can view your downloaded games, browse Apple Arcade titles, check in-game events, and track your achievements in your library. You can also sort and filter your games to quickly find what you're looking for.

## Browse Apple Arcade games

You can browse [Apple Arcade](#) by release date, age rating, category, or other criteria.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Apple Arcade.
3. Tap the filter icon, then do any of the following:
  - Turn Show Previews on or off.
  - Sort games by Release Date, Last Update, or Name.
  - Filter games by Category, Controller Support, Multiplayer, or Age Rating.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Browse the list of games under Your Games.
  - Tap the filter icon to sort games by name or recent activity, and filter by Controller Support, Installed Games, or Apple Arcade.

## See in-game events or recent updates

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Events.
3. Tap the game you want to see in-game events or updates for.

You can also see events and updates when you search for a game or open its game page in the Home or Search tab.

## Check your achievements for a game

Track your Game Center achievements for supported games. You can view your progress and see what goals you've completed.

1. Go to the Apple Games app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Achievements.
3. To organize your achievements, tap the filter icon, then do any of the following:
  - *Sort by:* Choose Date Played or Name
  - *Filter by Platform:* Show achievements for all platforms-iOS, macOS, tvOS, and visionOS.
4. Tap the game you want to check achievements for.

# Connect a game controller to iPhone

You can connect a compatible game controller to your iPhone through Bluetooth® or the Lightning or USB-C connector. You can customize the buttons and even add a second controller to get help from a friend.

## Pair a Bluetooth game controller

1. Follow the instructions that came with the controller to put it in discovery mode.
2. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap Bluetooth, turn on Bluetooth, then tap the name of the device.

See the Apple Support article [Connect a wireless game controller to your Apple device](#).

## Connect a game controller through the Lightning or USB-C connector

If you have a compatible game controller<sup>Draft</sup>, you can connect it to iPhone using the Lightning or USB-C connector. Depending on your iPhone model and controller, you may need an adapter (sold separately). Follow the instructions that came with your controller.

## Customize the game controller buttons

After you pair or connect a compatible game controller, you can customize the buttons for supported games from the Apple Games app.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Game Controller.
3. Tap the buttons you want to change.
4. To customize for a specific app, tap Add App.

## Add a second game controller and get help from a friend

With Buddy Controller, iPhone combines two controllers to drive a single player in a game so a friend can help you get to the next level. Buddy Controller is compatible with any game that supports game controllers.

1. Connect two compatible game controllers to iPhone through Bluetooth or the Lightning or USB-C connector.
2. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap General, then tap Game Controller.
4. Tap Buddy Controller.
5. Choose the primary controller, then choose the secondary controller.

## Report a problem with a game in the Apple Games app on iPhone

You can report a problem with a game that you downloaded from the Apple Games app on your iPhone. You can also request a refund.

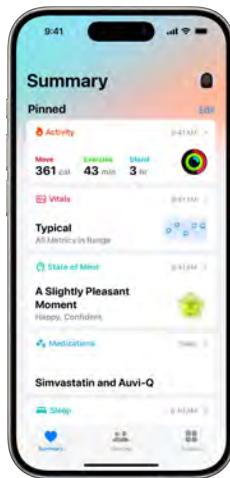
1. On your iPhone, go to [reportaproblem.apple.com](http://reportaproblem.apple.com), then sign in to your Apple Account.
2. Tap "I'd like to," then choose an option from the pop-up menu.
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

# Health

## Get started with Health on iPhone

The Health app on iPhone stores health data from a number of different sources: your iPhone, iPad, Apple Watch, and compatible apps and third-party devices. You can set up a sleep schedule, check your headphone levels, schedule when to take your medications, and much more.

### Find your health data in one place



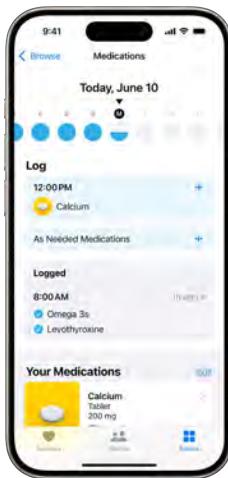
iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health details, including mobility data, sleep history, and even health records from your medical providers. You can also manually add information about medications you're taking, your menstrual cycle, and more. To display all of your health data, go to the Health app and scroll down to see highlights.

## Fill out your health details



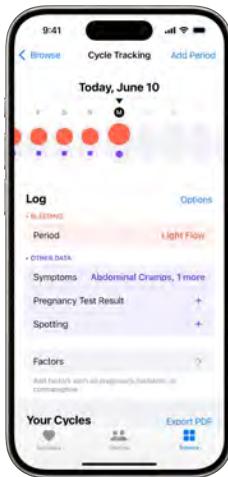
To personalize your experience, add your name, date of birth, sex, and other basic information to Health Details. To edit your health details, tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Health Details, then tap Edit.

## Schedule your medications



Create a list of the medications you're taking, schedule when to take them, and log when you do. To add a new medication, tap , tap Medications, then tap Add a Medication.

## Track your menstrual cycle



With Cycle Tracking, you can log your period, record symptoms like cramps, and track cycle factors like lactation. You can also use it to help predict when your next period or fertile window will begin. To set up Cycle Tracking, tap , tap Cycle Tracking, then tap Set Up Cycle Tracking.

Want to learn more?

- [View health records](#)
- [Add or change sleep schedules](#)
- [Log your state of mind](#)
- [Share your health data](#)
- [Back up your Health data](#)

## Fill out your Health Details in Health on iPhone

To personalize your experience, add your **Name**, date of birth, sex, height, weight, and other basic information to **Health Details**. To help first responders and others in case you have a medical emergency, create a **Medical ID** that contains information about medical conditions, medications, allergies, blood type, emergency contacts, and more. To better manage your health with the help of the **Health** app, periodically review the **Health Checklist**.

## Fill out the **Health Details** screen

When you first open **Health**, you're asked to provide basic health information about yourself. If you don't supply all of the requested information, you can add it later on the **Health Details** screen.

1. Go to the **Health** app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Summary**, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap **Health Details**, then tap **Edit**.



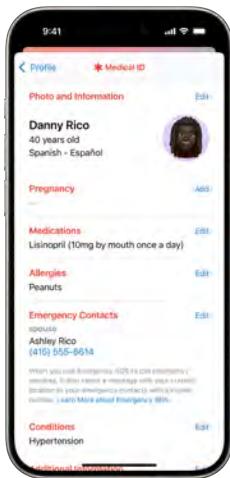
4. To make a change, tap a field.
5. When you're finished, tap , then swipe down to exit.

## Update your height and weight

1. Go to the **Health** app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Summary**, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap **Health Details**, then tap **Edit**.
4. Tap **Height** or **Weight**, then adjust.
5. When you're finished, tap , then swipe down to exit.

## Create a Medical ID

First responders and others can view critical medical information about you in your **Medical ID**, even while your iPhone is locked. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).



## Review your Health Checklist

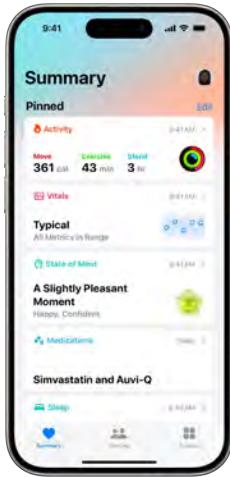
1. Go to the Health app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Checklist.
4. To turn on or learn more about an item in the list, tap it.
5. When you're finished, tap ⬤.

## View and share health data

### Intro to Health data on iPhone

The Health app securely stores your health information from iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch, as well as from compatible third-party apps and connected devices. You can also manually enter data for body measurements, symptoms, menstrual cycle information, and more.

On [supported models](#), say something like: "What's my heart rate?" or "How far have I walked today?" Not available in all languages or regions. [Learn how to use Siri](#).



## Health data from iPhone

iPhone automatically stores and analyzes valuable health data, including the following:

- *Steps, flights of stairs, and other* [Draft](#) *Walking data:* Built-in sensors on your iPhone capture the number of steps you take, the number of flights of stairs you climb, your walking speed, and more. You can [browse highlights, trends, and details](#) about this data in the Activity category in Health.
- *Mobility data:* iPhone stores important mobility metrics such as walking asymmetry, double support time, and more. Over time, as you walk with iPhone in your pocket or wear it near your waist, these metrics are used to calculate and record your walking steadiness. You can [browse](#) this data in the Mobility category. You can also [receive a notification](#) and [share your notification](#) with others if your steadiness becomes low enough to put you at increased risk of falling in the next 12 months.
- *Headphone audio levels:* Audio level measurements from connected AirPods, EarPods, or other compatible headphones are automatically stored in Health. You can [review](#) this data in the Hearing category to help you understand your headphone listening habits.
- *Sleep history:* If you [set up a sleep schedule in Health](#), iPhone estimates the periods you're lying in bed with the intention to sleep. You can [review this data](#) in the Sleep category to help you meet your sleep goals.
- *Health records from your healthcare providers:* You can [set up automatic downloads](#) of health records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, and more from supported healthcare organizations (not available in all countries or regions). You can [browse these records](#) in Health.

## Health data from Apple Watch

After you [pair iPhone](#) with Apple Watch, periodic heart rate and blood oxygen measurements are automatically sent from Apple Watch to Health, where you can [browse highlights, trends, and details](#) in the Heart and Respiratory categories. You can also set up Apple Watch to send additional information to Health, including the following:

- *Exercise minutes and other activity metrics:* You can [view these metrics](#) in the Activity category in Health on iPhone.
- *A history of time in daylight (Apple Watch SE 2nd generation, Apple Watch Series 6 or later, and all Apple Watch Ultra models):* The ambient light sensor in Apple Watch estimates how much time you've spent in daylight. You can [view details](#) in the Other Data category in Health on iPhone.
- *Notifications about high or low heart rates, low cardio fitness (watchOS 7.2 or later), and irregular heart rhythms (not available in all countries or regions):* You can [view the details](#) about these notifications in the Heart category.
- *Environmental noise levels and notifications about loud sounds:* You can [view the details](#) about noise in your environment in the Hearing category.
- *Overnight health metrics in the Vitals app:* You can view overnight health metrics—heart rate, respiratory rate, wrist temperature, blood oxygen, and sleep duration—to get a better understanding of your daily health status. If you wear your Apple Watch to sleep for multiple nights, the Vitals app establishes a typical range for each of your health metrics. If multiple metrics are outside your typical range, you'll receive a notification along with context for factors that may be involved—like medications or illness, for example. You can [view the details](#) about your overnight vitals in the Vitals category.
- *A history of hard falls (Apple Watch SE and Apple Watch Series 4 and later):* In the Other Data category, you can [view details](#) about the number of times fallen.

To learn more about health data from Apple Watch, see [Get started with health features](#), [Time spent in daylight](#), [Measure noise levels](#), [Track your vitals](#), and [Manage Fall Detection](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

## Health data from other apps and devices

As you set up health and fitness apps that you download from the App Store, follow their onscreen instructions to allow them to share data with Health.

To store data from devices like blood pressure monitors and weight scales, follow their setup instructions. Bluetooth® devices [need to be paired](#) with iPhone.

**Note:** You can [change health data permissions](#) for apps and devices at any time.

## Data that you add manually

You can manually enter data about your menstrual cycles, medications, body measurements, and more.

- *Add information about your menstrual cycles:* By logging menstrual cycle information, you can get period and fertile window predictions. See [Log menstrual cycle information in Health](#).
- *Add your medications, vitamins, and supplements:* By adding these items, you can get reminders to take them and learn more about them. See [Track your medications in Health](#).
- *Set up a sleep schedule:* Scheduling regular times for getting to bed and waking up can help you meet your sleep goals. See [Set up a Sleep Focus schedule in Health](#).
- *Add information to a Medical ID:* You can provide information about your medical conditions, medications, emergency contacts, and more in an emergency Medical ID. First responders and others can view this critical information directly on your iPhone, even while it's locked. See [Set up and view your Medical ID](#).
- *Add information to other Health categories:* Tap  at the bottom-right of Health, tap a category, tap  for the data you want to update, then tap Add Data at the top right.

**Important:** iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch aren't medical devices. See [Important safety information](#).

## View your data in Health on iPhone

You can view your health and fitness information in one place. For example, you can check whether your metrics change over time, and see how well you're meeting goals for activity, sleep, mindfulness, and more.

### Customize your pinned health categories on the Summary screen

You can pin and arrange the health categories that are most important to you, like Medications, Heart Rate, Steps, and more.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap Edit next to Pinned.

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Pin a health category:* Tap ✎ next to a category.
- *Unpin a health category:* Tap ● next to a category.
- *Reorder the health categories in your Pinned list:* Drag ≡ next to an category up or down.

4. When you're finished, tap ●.

## View your highlights

1. Go to the Health app 📈 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Highlights to see highlights of your recent health and fitness data.
3. Do the following:
  - *View more data about a highlight:* Tap its graph.
  - *View all highlights:* Tap Show All Highlights.

## View your health trends

To help you keep track of your health data over time, Health can alert you to significant changes in types of data like resting heart rate, number of steps, and amount of sleep. Trend lines show you how much these metrics have changed and for how long.

1. Go to the Health app 📈 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Trends to view any recent trends.
3. If Health has detected trends, you can do the following:
  - *View more data about a trend:* Tap its graph.
  - *View all trends:* Tap Show All Health Trends.

To [receive notifications](#) about your health trends, tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Notifications, then turn on Trends.

## View trends, highlights, and details for a specific health category

1. Go to the Health app 📈 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Q at the bottom-right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:
  - Tap a category. (To see all categories, scroll up and down.)
  - Tap the search field, then type the name of a category (such as Mobility) or a specific type of data (such as Walking Speed).

3. Depending on the data type, you Draft may be able to do the following:

- *View details about any of the data:* Tap >.
- *See weekly, monthly, and yearly views of the data:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen.
- *Manually enter data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
- *Pin to the Summary screen:* Tap Pin to Summary. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *View which apps and devices are allowed to share the data:* Below Options, tap Data Sources & Access. (You may need to scroll down.)
- *Delete data:* Tap Show All Data below Options, swipe left on a data record, then tap Delete. To delete all data, tap Edit, then tap Delete All.
- *Change the measurement unit:* Tap Unit below Options, then select a unit.

## Learn more about health and fitness

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then scroll down to Get More From Health or Articles.
3. Tap an item to learn more.

When you view the details in many health categories, recommended apps are shown in addition to your data.

## Share your data in Health on iPhone

You can share health data stored in the Health app—such as health alerts and trends—with friends, family, and others caring for you.

### Share health data with someone

People you share health data with can also view the health notifications you receive, including high heart rate and irregular rhythm notifications. You can also share notifications for significant trends, such as a steep decline in activity.

*Note:* To share health data with someone, you need to [include them in your contacts](#).

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then do one of the following:
  - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap Share with Someone.
  - *Share with an additional contact:* Tap "Add another person," then tap Next.
3. Use the search field to find someone in your contacts list, then tap their contact information to select them.
4. Tap See Suggested Topics or Set Up Manually, then choose topics to share.
5. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, choose options, then tap Next to see the next screen.
6. Tap Share, then tap Done.

You receive a notification when your invitation is accepted. Draft

## Share health data with your doctor

You can share health data (such as heart rate, exercise minutes, hours of sleep, lab results, and heart health notifications) with your doctors. Doctors view the data in a dashboard in their health records systems (U.S. only; on systems that support Health app data Share with Provider).

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Set up sharing for the first time:* Tap "Share with your doctor."
  - *Share with an additional provider:* Tap "Share with another doctor."
4. Tap Next, then select one of the suggested providers, or use Search to find your provider.
5. If Connect to Account appears, tap it, enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal for that account, then follow the onscreen instructions.

In addition to sharing your health data, connecting to your account also causes your health records for that account to [download to Health](#).
6. Choose topics to share with your doctor.
7. Scroll down to see all topics on a screen, then tap Next to see the next screen.
8. Tap Share, then tap Done.

## Review or change the data you're sharing with others

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
4. Scroll down, then tap View Shared Data.
5. Make any changes, then tap Done.

## Stop sharing data with a contact or a provider

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the name of a person or a healthcare provider.
4. Tap Stop Sharing or Remove Account.

*Note:* If you start sharing data with someone, simply removing them from Contacts doesn't stop the information from being shared.

## Share health and fitness data with apps and devices

You can give other apps permission to share health and fitness data with Health. For example, if you install a workout app, its exercise data can appear in Health. The workout app can also read and make use of data (such as your heart rate and weight) shared by other devices and apps. If you didn't give an app permission to share data with Health when you set up the app, you can give permission later. You can also remove permission from an app.

To share your records from healthcare providers with apps, see [Share your health records with other apps](#).

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Below Privacy, tap Apps or Devices.

The screen lists the items that requested access to Health data.

4. To change the access for an item, tap it, then turn on or off permission to write data to—or read data from—Health.

## Share your health and fitness data in XML format

You can export all of your health and fitness data from Health in XML format, which is a common format for sharing data between apps.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Export All Health Data, then choose a method for sharing your data.

## View data shared by others in Health on iPhone

You can [receive notifications](#) about a loved one's health, and you can view data about their activity, mobility, heart rate, and health trends in the Health app.

### Invite someone to share health data

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing, then tap Ask Someone to Share.
3. Choose a sharing option.

The person you selected receives an invitation and can then choose which health information to share. Let the invitee know that you need to be included in their contacts.

### Accept an invitation to view another person's health data

1. After the invitation arrives, do one of the following:
  - Tap the invitation, such as on the Lock Screen or in Notification Center.
  - In Health, tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen, then tap View in the invitation at the top of the screen.
2. Tap Accept, then tap Done.

### View shared data and quickly respond to it

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.

3. Tap the contact card listed below **Sharing With You**.
4. You can do any of the following:
  - *Quickly respond:* Tap Message, Call, or FaceTime.
  - *See more detail:* Tap an item on the screen.  
If the detail includes chart data, you can start a conversation about it by tapping Message. The chart is included in your message.

## Ask another person to share their health data with you

You can ask someone to share their health data with you if they have an iPhone with iOS 15.6 or later or an iPad with iPadOS 17 or later. They control what data they share and when to stop sharing.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sharing at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Ask Someone to Share, then choose an option.
4. Let your invitee know that you need to be [included in their contacts](#) to share with you, and that if they need assistance, sharing instructions are available in [Share health data with someone](#).

# Get health records from your providers

## Download health records on iPhone

The Health app offers secure access to information about your vaccinations, allergies, conditions, medications, and more (not available in all countries or regions).

You can use a QR code or a link from a healthcare provider or authority to download a test result record, and you can set up automatic downloads for a range of health records from supporting healthcare organizations.

*Note:* When iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of the health data in the Health app—other than what you [add to your Medical ID](#)—is encrypted.

## Set up automatic health record downloads from your healthcare provider

Supporting healthcare organizations can securely and automatically download records of your allergies, medical conditions, medications, labs, vaccinations, and more to Health.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Tap Health Records, then do one of the following:

- *Set up your first download:* Tap Get Started.
- *Set up downloads for additional accounts:* Tap Add Account.

A list of nearby organizations appears. If your organization doesn't appear in the list, enter the name of a clinic, hospital, or other place where you obtain health records. Or enter the name of a city, state, or province to find organizations near there.

4. Tap the name of your organization.
5. Tap Connect Account (below Available to Connect) to go to the sign-in screen for your patient portal.
6. Enter the user name and password you use for the patient web portal of that organization, then follow the onscreen instructions.

After you set up downloads from an organization, you automatically receive new records in Health as they become available.

*Note:* Your healthcare organization might not appear in this feature. Organizations are added frequently.

## View health records in Health on iPhone

After you [set up health record downloads](#) from a healthcare provider, your records are securely and automatically downloaded to iPhone, where they're available for viewing in the Health app.

### View your health records

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right to display the Health Categories screen, then do one of the following:
  - Tap the search field, then enter the name of a health record category (such as clinical vitals) or a type of data (such as blood pressure).
  - Scroll down, then tap a category (such as Allergies or Clinical Vitals) below Health Records.
  - Scroll down, then tap the name of a specific organization.

To see more details, tap any section where you see .

*Note:* If you don't see health records that you expect from a healthcare provider, make sure that you're signed in to your account with the provider. Tap , scroll to your list of accounts, tap the name of your provider, then sign in if asked.

### Pin important lab results

You can pin results so that they appear at the top of the Lab Results screen for quick access.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , scroll down, then tap Lab Results.

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- Swipe left on a result, then tap .
- Touch and hold a result, then tap Pin this Lab.

## Share your health records with other apps

Third-party apps can request access to your health records. Before you grant access, be sure that you trust the app with your records.

1. To grant access, choose which categories to share—such as allergies, medications, or immunizations—when asked.
2. Choose whether to grant access to your current and future health records or to only your current records.

If you choose to share only your current records, you're asked to grant access whenever new records are downloaded to your iPhone.

To stop sharing health records with the app, [turn off its permission](#) to read data from Health.

## Delete an organization and its records from iPhone

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Records, tap the name of an organization, then tap Remove Account.

# Monitor your walking steadiness in Health on iPhone

When you carry your iPhone in a pocket or holster near your waist, the Health app uses custom algorithms that assess your balance, strength, and gait. You can [receive a notification](#) if your steadiness becomes low or stays low, and you can automatically share the notification with someone close to you. Health can also show you exercises to help improve your walking steadiness. (iPhone 8 or later.)

## Receive notifications when your steadiness is low or very low

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.
3. Tap Health Checklist.
4. Tap Set Up for Walking Steadiness Notifications, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To review your notifications, tap  at the bottom-right, tap Mobility, scroll down, then tap Walking Steadiness Notifications.

To automatically share your walking steadiness notifications with somebody close to you, see [Share your data in Health](#).

## View your walking steadiness data

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Mobility.

3. Tap Walking Steadiness (you may Draft need to scroll down).
4. Tap Show More Walking Steadiness Data.
5. To learn about the three steadiness levels (OK, Low, and Very Low), tap ⓘ.

## Learn how to improve your walking steadiness

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Mobility.
3. Scroll down, then tap Exercises That May Improve Walking Steadiness.

## Track your menstrual cycle

### Log menstrual cycle information in Health on iPhone

You can log menstrual cycle information to get period and fertile window predictions.

On [supported models](#), [ask Siri](#) something like, "Log that my period started today." Not available in all languages or regions. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

#### Set up cycle tracking

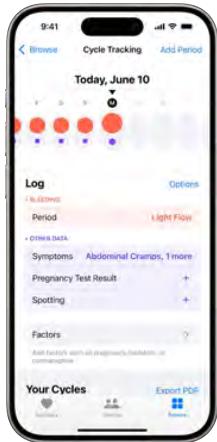
1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To help improve predictions for your period and fertile windows, enter the requested information.

#### Log your cycle information

You can log the days of a period and track information like symptoms, spotting, basal body temperature, and more.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.



- *Log a period day:* Tap a day in the timeline at the top of the screen.
- *Log multiple period days:* Tap ☰ at the top right, select days from the monthly calendar, then tap ☑.
- *Log the flow level for a day:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap Period (below Bleeding), choose an option, then tap Done.
- *Log symptoms, spotting, or other information:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap a category (below Other Data), supply the information, then tap Done.

To add categories to the data logging screen, tap Options next to Log, then choose from the categories below Log.

**Note:** You can use Apple Watch to help log your cycle information. See [Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

## Edit your log

Your logged information appears in the timeline at the top of the screen, where a solid red circle 🌄 represents a day you logged a period and a purple dot ⓘ represents a day you logged with additional information. Data for the day selected in the timeline appears in the Cycle Log (below the timeline). To change your logged information, do the following:

1. Go to the Health app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰ at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Swipe the timeline to select a day.
4. Tap a category of data (such as Menstruation or Symptoms), make your changes, then tap Done.

To unmark a period day, tap its solid red circle in the timeline.

## Manage cycle factors

When you enter information about pregnancy, lactation, and contraceptive use, that information is used to help manage your cycle predictions.

1. Go to the Health app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ☰ at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

### 3. Tap Factors, then do any of the following:

- *Add a factor:* Tap +, select a factor, tap Started if you need to change the start date, then tap .
- *Change the end date for a current factor:* Tap the factor, tap Ended, select a date, then tap .
- *Delete a current factor:* Tap the factor, then tap Delete Factor From Health.

## About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default [two-factor authentication](#) and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data [synced to iCloud](#) is encrypted end-to-end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

## View menstrual cycle predictions and history in Health on iPhone

When you [log your menstrual cycle](#), you can check the predicted date for your next period or fertile window, receive notifications about when your next period or fertile window is expected to be approaching, view details about your cycle history, and more.

Note: Health can also use data from Apple Watch to improve the predictions for your period and fertile windows. See [Use Cycle Tracking on Apple Watch](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

### View your cycle timeline

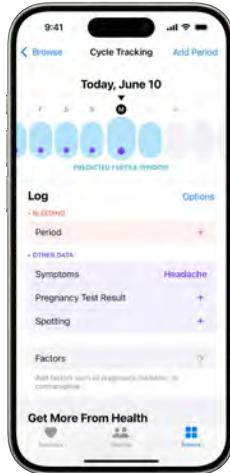
Tap Q at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

At the top of the screen, a timeline shows the following icons.

Icon	Description
	A predicted period day.
	A predicted day of your fertile window.

Icon	Draft Description
	A day you likely ovulated (requires Apple Watch Series 8 or later or any Apple Watch Ultra model to be paired with your iPhone; not available in all regions).
	A day you logged a period.
	A day you added information (for example, noting a headache or cramping).

To select different days, swipe the timeline.



Check the dates for your predicted next period and for your reported last period

**Note:** Make sure you have Period Predictions turned on in Options.

1. Go to the Health app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⌂ at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll to Highlights to see when your next period is likely to start.  
If you don't see the estimate, tap Show All next to Highlights.
4. Scroll to Summary to see the date of your last period and your typical cycle length.

## View your cycle history

1. Go to the Health app 📱 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⌂ at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. To see a summary of your last three cycles, scroll down to Your Cycles.

4. To see summaries of all previous Draft cycles, tap Cycle History.

To send or a save a PDF of your cycle history, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

5. To see details about a cycle, tap it.

To change any details for the cycle, tap Edit.

To send or a save a PDF of the cycle details, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

## If you receive a Cycle Deviation notification

You can [receive a notification](#) if your logged cycle history shows a possible cycle deviation. Irregular periods, infrequent periods, prolonged periods, and persistent spotting are common cycle deviations that may indicate an underlying condition, or may be due to other factors.

When you receive a notification, do the following to review your logged cycle history:

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Review Cycle History in the Possible Cycle Deviation notification.

3. Follow the onscreen instructions to confirm, add, or edit the data in your cycle history.

If a cycle deviation is detected, a screen suggests what to do next.

## View your cycle summary

You can view a summary of your last menstrual period, typical period length, typical cycle length, ongoing factors, and more.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap Cycle Tracking.

3. Scroll down then tap Summary.

4. Scroll to view statistics of your last year of data.

## Change cycle tracking notifications, cycle prediction displays, and other options

You can turn off period, fertility, and cycle deviation notifications, hide period and fertility predictions, and more. You can turn these on again at any time.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap Cycle Tracking.

3. Scroll down, tap Options, then turn options on or off.

## About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default [two-factor authentication](#) and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

Draft

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data [synced to iCloud](#) is encrypted end to end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

\*For information about the availability of the retrospective ovulation estimates feature, see [watchOS Feature Availability](#).

## Log a pregnancy in Health on iPhone

When you log a pregnancy in the Health app, you can view your gestational age and log the symptoms frequently experienced during pregnancy. The Health app on iPhone and the Cycle Tracking app on Apple Watch can help you to better understand your data during pregnancy. Both apps make adjustments and recommendations to reflect changes in your physical and mental health.



### Log a pregnancy

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Scroll down, tap Factors, then tap .
4. Tap Pregnancy, then tap Begin.
5. Do one of the following:
  - *Log the first day of your last period:* Tap Last Menstrual Period.
  - *Log an estimated due date:* Tap Estimated Due Date.
  - *Log how far along the pregnancy is in weeks:* Tap Estimated Gestational Age.
  - *Log when the embryo was transferred during IVF:* Tap Embryo Transfer Date.

*Note:* To log a previous pregnancy, tap Log a Past Pregnancy.

6. Tap Next, follow the onscreen instructions, then tap Next.

7. Tap Next, then do the following: Draft

- *Turn on mental health questionnaire reminders (optional):* Tap Turn On Notifications.
- *Add your pregnancy to your Medical ID (optional):* Tap Turn On Notifications.
- *Review your medication information:* Tap Learn More below a medication to learn about any potential impact on your pregnancy, then tap Next.

8. Review the Cycle Timeline, then tap Done.

**Note:** You can also log a pregnancy in your Health Details. Tap Summary, tap your picture or initials at the top right, tap Health Details, then tap Set Up Pregnancy in Cycle Tracking.

While logging a pregnancy, you get a variety of recommendations of notifications that should be turned on or off during and after pregnancy:

- *Walking Steadiness:* Recommended to be turned on. Walking Steadiness can alert you more quickly during your third trimester, when the risk of falling can increase.
- *High Heart Rate (Apple Watch only):* If your high heart rate notification threshold is set below 120 beats per minute (bpm), you're asked to review and adjust it.
- *Cardio Fitness (Apple Watch only):* Cardio Fitness notifications are recommended to be turned off during and until 12 weeks after the end of your pregnancy.

To review your health notification settings, see [Review your Health Checklist](#).

## Log bleeding and other symptoms

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Swipe to select a day, then do any of the following:
  - *Log bleeding:* Tap Bleeding During Pregnancy, tap Had Bleeding, select a bleeding level, then tap Done.

**Note:** When you log bleeding during your pregnancy, you receive a notification recommending that you contact your doctor or care team.

- *Log symptoms or other information:* Swipe the timeline to select a day, tap a category (below Other Data), supply the information, then tap Done.

To add categories to the data logging screen, tap Options next to Log, then choose from the categories below Log.

## View the pregnancy cycle timeline

Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.

At the top of the screen, a timeline shows the following icons.

Icon	Description
------	-------------

Icon	Draft Description
	A day you logged a pregnancy.
	A future day where you may still be pregnant.
	The day of your estimated due date.

To select different days, swipe the timeline.

## Edit your pregnancy details

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Cycle Tracking.
3. Tap the Pregnancy area, then do any of the following:
  - *Change the estimation method:* Tap Change, then tap an estimation method.
  - *Edit your estimation method:* Tap a field to make a change.
  - *Delete your pregnancy information:* Tap Delete Factor from Health.
4. When you're finished, tap .

## About your health data and privacy

The information you add about yourself in Health is yours to use and share. You can decide what information is stored in Health as well as who can access your data.

If you choose to add a pregnancy to Medical ID, your pregnancy status will be accessible on the Lock Screen if Show When Locked is turned on. Your pregnancy status will also be shared with first responders during an emergency call if Share During Emergency Call is turned on. You can change your Medical ID settings at any time by going to your [Health app Profile](#). You can remove or update your pregnancy status in Medical ID if your status changes.

When your iPhone is locked with Face ID, Touch ID, or a passcode, all of your health and fitness data in Health, other than your Medical ID, is encrypted. Any health data synced to iCloud is encrypted both in transit and on Apple servers. And if you have a version of iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS (if you're using iPad and Apple Watch for cycle tracking) with default [two-factor authentication](#) and a passcode, your health and activity data is stored in a way that Apple can't read it.

This means that when you use the Cycle Tracking feature and two-factor authentication, your health data [synced to iCloud](#) is encrypted end to end, and Apple doesn't have the key to decrypt the data and therefore cannot read it.

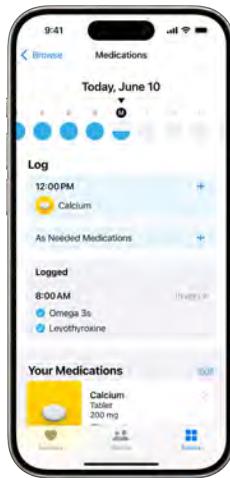
# Manage your medications

Draft

## Track your medications in Health on iPhone

You can track and manage the medications, vitamins, and supplements you take.

On [supported models](#), say something like: "Log my 6AM medications as taken." Not available in all languages or regions. [Learn how to use Siri](#).



**Note:** Some features are not available in all countries or regions. The Medications feature is not a substitute for professional medical judgment. Additional information is available on the labels of your medications. Consult your healthcare provider prior to making any decisions related to your health.

### Add and schedule a new medication

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.
3. Tap Add a Medication (to start your list) or Add Medication (to add to your list).
4. To identify the medication, do one of the following:

- *Type the name:* Tap the text field, enter the name, then tap Add.

In the U.S. only, suggestions appear as you begin typing. You can select a suggestion, or finish typing the name, then tap Add.

- *Use the camera:* (U.S. only) Tap  next to the text field, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If a match isn't found, tap Search by Name, then type the name (as described above).

5. Do the following:

Draft

- *Choose the medication type:* Tap an option, then tap Next.
- *Choose the medication strength:* Tap an option, then tap Next.
- *Set a schedule:* Follow the onscreen instructions to set the frequency and duration of your scheduled medication, then tap Next.  
Tap Change under “When will you take this?” to choose a different schedule type, like On a Cyclical Schedule, or Every Few Days.
- *Choose the shape (optional):* Tap an option, then tap Next.
- *Choose the colors (optional):* Tap an option, then tap Next.

6. When you’re finished, tap Done.

## Turn on Follow Up Reminders and Critical Alerts

If you set a medication schedule, you [receive notifications](#) from the Health app reminding you to log the medication. You can receive follow-up reminders if a medication hasn’t been logged 30 minutes after the scheduled time.

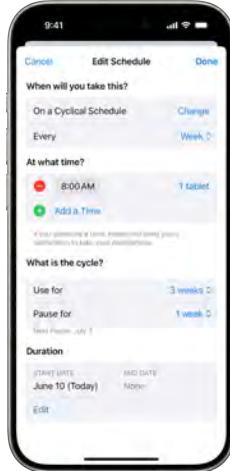
1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.
3. Tap Options at the bottom of the screen, then turn on Follow Up Reminders.

When you turn on Follow Up Reminders, you can also turn on Critical Alerts for each of your medications. Critical Alerts appear on the Lock Screen and play a sound (even if a Focus is on or iPhone is muted).

4. Tap Critical Alerts, tap the button next to a medication, then tap Allow.

To turn off Critical Alerts, go to Settings  > Apps > Health > Notifications, then tap the button next to Critical Alerts.

## Change the schedule for a medication or update other information



1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.

Draft

3. Scroll down to Your Medications, ~~Draft~~ do any of the following:

- *Change the schedule for a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down to Schedule, tap Edit, then tap a field to change it.
- *Change the icon, nickname, or notes for a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down to Details, tap Edit to change the icon or tap either of the text fields, then make your changes.
- *Reorder your list:* Tap Edit above the list of your medications, touch and hold  $\equiv$  for a medication, drag it to a new position, then tap  $\checkmark$ .
- *Archive a medication:* Swipe left on its name in the list of your medications, then tap Archive.
- *Make an archived medication reappear in your list of medications:* Tap Edit above the list of your medications, then tap  $\checkmark$  next to the medication name, then tap  $\checkmark$ . Any schedule you previously set is not preserved.
- *Delete a medication:* Tap a medication, scroll down, then tap Delete Medication.
- *Change how you receive notifications about taking medications:* See [View and respond to notifications](#) and [Change notification settings](#).

## Log when you take a medication

You can log a medication, scheduled or unscheduled, at any time. By default, your iPhone will remind you when it's time to log your medications based on the schedule you've created in the Health app.

**Note:** For your Health app data to sync across devices, make sure they're signed in to the same Apple Account, are connected to the internet, and are updated to the latest OS version.



1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.
3. Select a day at the top of the screen.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Log whether you took a scheduled medication:* Tap the name of a medication in the list below Log, then below the medication, tap Taken or Skipped.
  - *Log an unscheduled medication:* Tap As Needed Medications in the list below Log, then below the medication, tap Taken.

5. When you're finished, tap Done. Draft

**Tip:** When you receive a notification to log a scheduled medication, press and hold the notification, then choose an option.

To review your history of taking the medication, tap  at the bottom-right, tap Medications, then tap the medication (in the list of your medications).

## Share your medication list

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

- *Share your list (or just specific medications) with a loved one:* See [Share your data in Health](#).

**Tip:** If you add a new medication after you start sharing, add it to your shared list.

- *Share your list as a PDF:* Tap  at the bottom-right, tap Medications, scroll down, tap Export PDF, tap , then choose an option.

## Learn more about your medications in Health on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can learn more about the medications you add to your medications list.

### Learn about a medication

You can learn more about what a medication is used for, how it works, potential side effects, and how to pronounce it.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.
3. Tap the medication (in the list of your medications), then scroll down to About.

### Learn about interactions between your medications

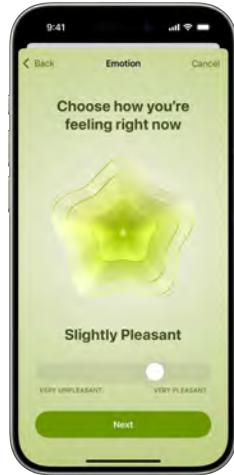
1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Medications.
3. Scroll down, then tap Drug Interactions.
4. To learn whether interaction factors like alcohol might interact with your medications, tap Edit (in the Interaction Factors area), select the factors that apply, then tap Done.
5. To learn more about an interaction, tap it.

## Track your mental wellbeing

## Log your state of mind in Health on iPhone

You can reflect on how you're feeling and **Draft** your momentary emotions and daily moods to keep track of your mental wellbeing. You can also learn how your state of mind may correlate with lifestyle factors like exercise, sleep, time in daylight, and mindful minutes.

## Log your state of mind



1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap State of Mind.
3. If this is your first time logging, tap Get Started. Otherwise, tap Log.
4. Choose one of the following:
  - *Log an emotion:* Tap "How you feel right now," then tap Next.
  - *Log a mood:* Tap "How you've felt overall today," then tap Next.
5. Drag the slider to indicate how you're feeling, then tap Next.
6. Tap any words that describe how you're feeling (optional), then tap Next.
7. Tap any words that describe what's having the biggest impact on you (optional), then tap Done.

If you've described what's having the biggest impact on you, you can tap Additional Context to enter more information.

## View your state of mind history

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap State of Mind.

3. Tap Show in Charts, then do any of the following:

- *View your state of mind over time:* Tap an option from the time range selections at the top of the chart.
- *View the types of entries you've logged:* Tap States, then tap Daily Moods or Momentary Emotions to see those entries on the graph.
- *View factors associated with your entries:* Tap Associations, then scroll through the different factors you logged in your state of mind entries.
- *View lifestyle factors associated with your entries:* Tap Life Factors, then tap a lifestyle factor to see it alongside your state of mind entries.

You can also tap ⓘ next to each lifestyle factor to learn more about how it can impact your mental wellbeing.

## Set state of mind reminders

You can get reminders to log your state of mind.

1. Go to the Health app 🩺 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ, tap Mental Wellbeing, then tap State of Mind.
3. Scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap Options.
4. Turn During Your Day and End of Day on or off.

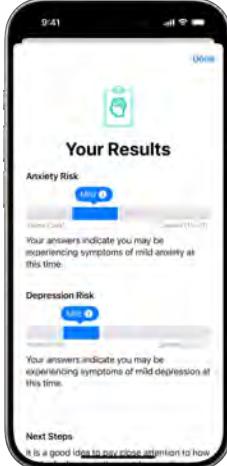
You can also tap Add Reminder to create additional reminders.

## Take a mental health assessment in Health on iPhone

You can take age-appropriate standardized mental health assessments to answer questions about how you're feeling, and see your current risk for depression or anxiety. These questionnaires will help you understand if you should talk to your doctor, and you'll have a PDF of the results that you can share. The results and resources are provided for informational purposes only and are not a substitute for advice provided by a doctor or other qualified health care professional.

*Note:* The Anxiety Risk assessment is available for ages 13 and older. The Depression Risk assessment is available for ages 18 and older.

### Take a mental health assessment



1. Go to the Health app 🩺 on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap , then tap Mental Wellbeing. Draft
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Take an assessment for anxiety or depression:* Tap Anxiety Risk or Depression Risk, then tap Take Questionnaire.
  - *Take an assessment for both anxiety and depression:* Scroll down to Get More From Health, then tap Take Questionnaire.
4. Tap Begin, then answer the prompts.
5. When you're finished, tap Done. Then you can do any of the following:
  - *Learn more about your results:* Tap  next to your results.
  - *Export your results as a PDF:* Tap Export PDF.
  - *Get access to articles and crisis resources:* Scroll down to Learn More, then tap an option.
6. When you're finished viewing your results, tap Done.

**Note:** The Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9) and Generalized Anxiety Disorder-7 (GAD-7), developed by Drs. Robert L. Spitzer, Janet B. W. Williams, Kurt Kroenke and colleagues, with an educational grant from Pfizer Inc., can be useful tools to help identify if you are at risk for depression and/or anxiety. They are provided in Health for informational purposes only, and the results are not a medical diagnosis. The assessments are clinically validated only in certain countries and languages. If you have concerns about your mental health, you should consult a clinician.

## Manage mental health assessment settings

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Mental Wellbeing.
3. Tap Anxiety Risk or Depression Risk, scroll down to the bottom of the screen, then tap Options below Export PDF.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Change how often you want to take mental health questionnaires:* Tap Frequency, then choose an option.
  - *Choose whether to be notified to take a questionnaire:* Turn Notifications on or off.
  - *Receive prompts to take a questionnaire after a pattern of unpleasant moods:* Turn Unpleasant Logging on or off.

When you turn on Periodic Questionnaires and Unpleasant Logging, you receive a prompt to take a questionnaire a couple of times a year or when you have a pattern of unpleasant moods.

## Prioritize your sleep

### Set up a sleep schedule in Health on iPhone

You can schedule regular times for going to bed and waking up to help meet your sleep goals. You can create multiple schedules—for example, one for weekdays and another for weekends.

Draft

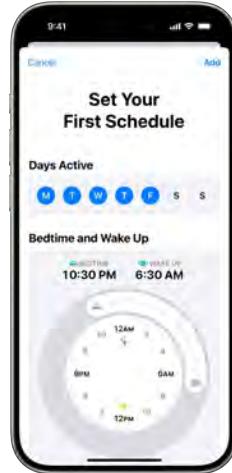
For the sleep schedules you set, a Sleep Focus helps reduce distractions before and during bedtime. For example, it can filter out notifications and phone calls, and it can signal to others that you're not available. You can also schedule a wind down period to begin from 15 minutes to 3 hours before your bedtime. Your Sleep Focus begins at the start of your wind down time.

To help you wake up on time, you can select an alarm sound, a vibration, and a snooze option. Or you can choose to have no alarm at all.

## Set up your first recurring sleep schedule

When you set up a Sleep Focus, you can set your next bedtime and wake up time. This schedule repeats only once. To set up a recurring sleep schedule, do the following:

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
4. Tap Set Your First Schedule, then select your options:
  - *Set the days for your schedule:* Tap a day at the top of the screen to add or remove it from your schedule. The schedule applies only to days shown with solid-color circles.
  - *Adjust your bedtime and wake up schedule:* Drag  to change your bedtime,  to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
  - *Set the alarm options:* Turn Alarm on or off.
- When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, the snooze option, and snooze duration.
5. When you're finished, tap Add.



## Add, modify, or delete sleep schedules

After setting up your first sleep schedule, you can do the following:

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.

Draft  
3. After setting up your first sleep schedule, you can do the following:

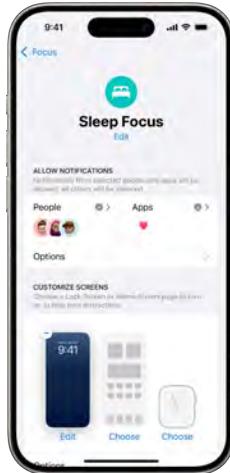
- *Set up additional schedules:* For example, if you have a weekday schedule, you can add a weekend schedule. See [Add or change a sleep schedule](#).
- *Change schedules:* You can adjust the bedtimes, wake up times, and alarm options for an entire sleep schedule or for only your next schedule. See [Add or change a sleep schedule](#).
- *Turn off alarms:* You can turn off alarms for all sleep schedules, for a particular schedule, or for only your next scheduled wake up time. See [Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health](#).
- *Remove a schedule:* See [Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm](#).

## Set up a Sleep Focus

After you set up your sleep schedule, you can set up a Sleep Focus to help reduce distractions before and during bedtime.

1. Go to Settings  > Focus, then tap Sleep.
2. Customize your focus.

For example, you can allow interruptions from people important to you, customize the Lock Screen and Home Screen, and customize how apps and your iPhone behave when a Sleep Focus is on. See [Set up a Focus](#).



Note: You can [use the Clock app](#)  to set one-time and repeating alarms that don't turn on a Sleep Focus.

## Turn off alarms and delete sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

You can turn off your scheduled alarms and turn off or delete your sleep schedules.

### Turn off all sleep schedules and alarms

After you create one or more sleep schedules, you can turn them all off at once. When all sleep schedules are turned off, scheduled alarms are also turned off.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.

3. Tap Sleep, then scroll down to Your Schedule.
4. Tap Full Schedule & Options, then turn off Sleep Schedule (at the top of the screen).



You can turn them all on again later.

*Note:* To turn off alarms you set in the Clock app, see [Turn off an alarm](#).

### Delete a sleep schedule and its alarm

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
4. Tap Edit for the schedule you want to remove.
5. Tap Delete Schedule (at the bottom of the screen).

### Permanently turn off the alarm for a sleep schedule

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
4. Tap Edit for the sleep schedule you want to change.
5. Turn off Alarm.

You can turn it back on again later.

6. Tap .

The rest of your sleep schedule remains in effect.

### Turn off only your next scheduled alarm

1. Go to the Health app .
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).



5. When you're finished, tap .

After your next wake up time, your normal alarm resumes.

*Note:* You can also use the Clock app  to [change your next sleep schedule alarm](#).

## Add or change sleep schedules in Health on iPhone

After you [set up your first sleep schedule](#), you can set additional schedules—for example, you can create separate schedules for weekdays and the weekend. You can also modify any schedule—for example, you can change its wake up time.



### Add or change a sleep schedule

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Add a sleep schedule:* Tap Add Schedule.
  - *Change a sleep schedule:* Tap Edit for the schedule you want to change.

- *Set the days for your schedule:* Tap a day at the top of the screen to add or remove it from your schedule. The schedule applies only to days shown with solid-color circles.
- *Adjust your bedtime and wake up schedule:* Drag  to change your bedtime,  to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
- *Set the alarm options:* Turn Alarm on or off.

When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.

*Note:* You can't select a song for a sleep schedule alarm. However, you can [select a song for an alarm](#) with the Clock app .

6. When you're finished, tap Add or .

When you tap , the changes apply to every day in the schedule.

### Change only your next schedule

You can make a temporary change to a sleep schedule.

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Edit (below Next).
4. Drag  to change your bedtime,  to change your wake up time, or the semicircle between the icons to shift both times simultaneously.
5. Choose alarm options.

When Alarm is turned on, you can choose a sound, its volume, a vibration, and the snooze option.

6. Tap .

*Note:* You can also use the Clock app  to [change your next sleep schedule alarm](#).

After your next wake up time, your normal schedule resumes.

## Turn your Sleep Focus on or off on iPhone

Quickly turn your Sleep Focus on or off

[Open Control Center](#), tap Focus, then tap Sleep.



Your Sleep Focus turns on or off again at your next scheduled bedtime or wake up time.

To share your Sleep Focus settings with your other devices, make sure you have Share Across Devices turned on. Go to the Settings app ⓘ, tap Focus, then tap Share Across Devices.

### Turn off your Sleep Focus for all sleep schedules

1. Go to the Health app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.
4. Turn off Use Schedule for Sleep Focus.

When this setting is off, your sleep schedules remain in effect, but your Sleep Focus doesn't automatically turn on. You can turn this setting on again at any time.

## Change your wind down period, sleep goal, and more in Health on iPhone

You can change Sleep options like the duration of your wind down period, how many hours of sleep you want to get, and more.

1. Go to the Health app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, scroll down to Your Schedule, then tap Full Schedule & Options.

#### 4. Scroll down to Additional Details, then make your changes:

- *Wind down period:* Tap Wind Down, then select how many minutes or hours to give yourself to wind down before your scheduled bedtime. Your Sleep Focus turns on at the beginning of the wind down period.
- *Sleep goal:* Tap Sleep goal, then select a time. Any new schedules you set up reflect your new goal.
- *Sleep notifications:* Turn Sleep Reminders or Sleep Results on or off.

*Note:* Sleep Results notifications require data from Apple Watch or other sleep tracking apps and hardware.



## View your sleep history in Health on iPhone

Sleep data provides insight into your sleep habits.

To obtain sleep data, you can [use a sleep tracker or monitor](#), or manually add the data.

On [supported models](#), say something like: "How much did I sleep last night?" Not available in all languages or regions. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

1. Go to the Health app 📈 on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ at the bottom-right, then tap Sleep.
3. Tap Sleep, then do any of the following:
  - *View sleep data by week or month:* Tap a tab at the top of the screen.
  - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.
  - *View the details for a day:* Tap the column for the day.
  - *Manually add sleep data:* Tap Add Data in the top-right corner of the screen.
  - *Get cumulative sleep data:* Tap Show More Sleep Data.

## Use headphone hearing safeguards

### Check your headphone audio levels on iPhone

While using headphones with iPhone, you can check the audio level by viewing the Hearing control in Control Center. In the Health app, you can review the history of your headphone listening habits. Draft

If you listen to loud headphone audio long enough to affect your hearing, iPhone automatically [sends you a notification](#) that you should turn down the volume. After you receive a notification, the next time you plug in your headphones or connect them using Bluetooth®, your volume is automatically set to a lower level. You can turn the volume up again if you choose.

**Tip:** To review the details of a headphone notification, tap  at the bottom-right of Health, then tap Hearing, then tap Headphone Notifications.

## Check your headphone levels while you listen

You can view your live headphone levels in Control Center.

1. [Open Control Center](#).
2. Tap  at the top left of Control Center, then tap Add a Control.
3. Scroll down to Hearing Accessibility, then tap Hearing.
4. Tap  in Control Center.

The audio level (in decibels) of your headphones is displayed on the Headphone Level meter.

**Note:** You can also tap Live Listen (below the Headphone Level meter) to turn Live Listen on or off. See [Use Live Listen](#). Typically, headphone level monitoring and Live Listen aren't used at the same time. The Headphone Level monitor is intended for listening to audio playback. Live Listen is intended for listening to external sounds with the iPhone microphone.

## Check your headphone levels over time

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom-right, then tap Hearing.
3. Tap Headphone Audio Levels, then do any of the following:
  - *See exposure levels over a period of time:* Tap the tabs at the top of the screen. (All levels are measured in decibels.)
  - *Learn about the sound level classifications:* Tap .
  - *Change the time span displayed in the graph:* Swipe the graph left or right.
  - *Display highlights:* Scroll down to Highlights, then tap Show All.

To learn more about your headphone audio levels, tap Show More Data.

## Reduce loud headphone sounds

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics, then tap Headphone Safety.

3. Turn on Reduce Loud Audio, then **Draft** drag the slider.

iPhone analyzes your headphone audio and reduces any sound above the level you set.



**Note:** If you [set up Screen Time](#) for family members, you can prevent them from changing the Reduce Loud Sounds level. Go to Settings > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > Reduce Loud Sounds, then select Don't Allow.

## Get headphone audio notifications

You can find headphone notifications on the Summary screen of the Health app .

**Note:** Depending on your country or region, Headphone Notifications may be turned on by default, and in some countries or regions, you may not be able to turn it off. If allowed in your country or region, you can do the following:

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics, then tap Headphone Safety.
3. Turn Headphone Notifications on or off.

In addition, you can use the Settings app  to set a maximum decibel level that keeps your headphone audio at a comfortable level.

Headphone audio measurements are most accurate when using Apple or Beats headphones. Audio played through other headphones can be estimated based on the volume of your iPhone.

## Use hearing health features in Health on iPhone

You can take a Hearing Test with your AirPods Pro 2 to provide insight into your hearing. Hearing Test results (audiograms) depict the results of a pure-tone audiometry test—they display how loud sounds need to be for you to hear them.

The difference between the decibel level you need and a normal level indicates your level of hearing loss. If there's no difference, your hearing is normal. If there's some or a lot of difference, your hearing is impaired.

**Note:** The Hearing Test is available for ages 18 and older. Not available in all countries or regions.

### Take a Hearing Test

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap Hearing.

Draft

3. Scroll down to Get More From Health, then tap Take Hearing Test.

4. Tap Get Started, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can review the results from the Hearing Test in the Health app. You can also export a PDF version of your audiogram to share with your hearing healthcare professional.

For more information, see [Use hearing health features with AirPods Pro 2](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Register as an organ donor in Health on iPhone (U.S. only)

You can register to be an organ, eye, or tissue donor with Donate Life America. If you later change your decision, you can remove your registration. Your decision to donate is accessible to others in your Medical ID.

### Learn about organ donation

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Tap Organ Donation, then tap Learn More for an overview of organ donation and Donate Life America.

### Register with Donate Life America

1. Go to the Health app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Summary, then tap your picture or initials at the top right.

3. Tap Organ Donation, then tap Sign Up with Donate Life.

To later change your donor information or remove your registration, tap your picture or initials, tap Organ Donation, then tap Edit Donor Registration.

## Back up your Health data in iCloud on iPhone

If you [sign in with your Apple Account](#), your health and fitness information in the Health app is stored automatically in iCloud. Your information is encrypted as it goes between iCloud and your device and while it's stored in iCloud.

In addition to using iCloud, or if you aren't using iCloud, you can back up your Health data by encrypting a computer backup. See [Back up iPhone](#).

**Note:** For your Health app data to sync across devices, make sure your devices are [signed in to the same Apple Account](#), are connected to the internet, and are updated to the latest OS version.

### Manage your Health data in iCloud

You can make sure your Health data is synced across all of your devices. You can also stop storing your data at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone

2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.

Draft

# Home

## Intro to Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to securely add, control, and automate HomeKit and Matter-enabled accessories, such as lights, locks, and thermostats. When you [set up security cameras that support HomeKit Secure Video](#), you can capture video, and receive a notification when a camera recognizes someone or when a package is left at the door. You can also open a compatible lock with a [home key](#), group multiple speakers to play the same audio, and [send and receive Intercom messages](#) on supported devices.

You can [create automations](#) to run automatically at certain times, or when you activate a particular accessory (for example, when you unlock the front door). You can also [control your home remotely](#) with the aid of a home hub—an Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers. This lets you, and others you invite, securely control your home while you're away.

*Note:* Matter-enabled accessories require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K. Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router. [Thread-enabled iPhone devices](#) are able to locally pair and manage Thread accessories, which may require an update from the accessory manufacturer.

### Home overview

The Home app lets you easily navigate and control your accessories. In the Home app, tap the Home tab to show the following sections:

- *Categories:* Tap a category such as Climate, Lights, Security, Speakers & TVs, or Water to show all related accessories on one screen, organized by room.
- *Cameras:* Video from up to four cameras can appear below Cameras. Swipe left to see more cameras.
- *Scenes:* Create scenes to control multiple accessories with a tap or Siri request—tap a scene to close the blinds and turn on the lights in the evening, for example.
- *Favorites:* Add to Favorites the accessories you use most often to quickly control them from the Home tab.
- *Rooms:* Accessories are organized by room, helping you find just the accessory you need.



## Edit the Home tab

You can organize the Home tab in ways that suit you best.

Tap ⓘ, then do any of the following.

- *Rearrange items:* Select Edit Home View, then drag tiles to a different position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Reorder sections:* To change the way sections such as Favorites or Scenes are ordered on the Home tab, choose Reorder Sections, then drag ⓘ next to a section to a new position. Tap Done when you're finished.
- *Resize icons:* Select Edit Home View, tap a tile, tap ⓘ, then tap Done.

To learn more about how to create and accessorize a smart home with your Apple devices, tap Discover at the bottom of the screen.

## Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home on iPhone

iOS 16.2 introduced a new version of Apple Home that's more reliable and efficient. For availability and details, see the Apple Support article [Upgrade to the new version of Apple Home](#).

Before you upgrade, make sure that Apple devices connected to your home are using the latest software. This includes any owner's devices and any shared users' devices.

*Note:* A home hub such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod is required for features such as remote access, sharing your Home, notifications, automations, HomeKit Secure Video, and Adaptive Lighting. iPad is not supported as a home hub with the new version of Apple Home. You can continue to use the Home app on iPad to connect and control your smart home accessories.

## Upgrade your home

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⓘ, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Software Update, tap Learn More, then follow the onscreen instructions.

*Note:* Any connected devices that aren't using the latest software will lose access to the upgraded home until they're updated.

# Set up accessories with Home on iPhone

Draft

The first time you open the Home app, the setup assistant helps you create a home, where you can add accessories and define rooms. If you've already created a home when setting up a different accessory, you skip this step.

## Add an accessory to Home

Before you add an accessory such as a light or camera, be sure that it's connected to a power source, is turned on, and has network connectivity.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home at the bottom left, then tap Add Accessory.

You can also tap  at the top of the screen, then choose Add Accessory.

3. If you're pairing a Matter accessory that was previously paired to another app, tap More options, then select your accessory. Open the accessory's app, then generate a pairing code, which will be used to complete pairing with the Home app.
4. Follow the onscreen instructions.

**Note:** Matter-enabled accessories require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K. Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router. [Thread-enabled iPhone devices](#) are able to locally pair and manage Thread accessories, which may require an update from the accessory manufacturer.

You may need to scan a QR code, enter an 8-digit HomeKit setup code found on the accessory itself (or its box or documentation), or enter an 11 or 21-digit code for Matter-enabled accessories. A supported smart TV displays a QR code for you to scan. You can assign the accessory to a room, give it a name, then use this name when controlling the accessory with Siri. You can also [add suggested automations](#) during setup.

When you set up Apple TV in tvOS and assign it to a room, it automatically appears in that room in the Home app on iPhone.

Paired Matter accessories are synced across devices and stored in the Settings app using iCloud Keychain, regardless of which app you used to set them up. You can easily add a previously paired accessory that's stored in Keychain to another Matter ecosystem app. To manage these accessories, go to Settings  > General, then tap Matter accessories. See the Apple Support article [Pair and manage your Matter accessories](#).

## Show accessories in a room

You can show individual rooms, scenes assigned to them, and a room's accessories organized by category.

In Room View, do one of the following.

- Tap  next to a room's name.
- Tap , then choose a room.

## Change an accessory's room assignment

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold an accessory tile, then tap Accessory Settings.

Draft

3. Tap Room, then choose a room. Draft

## Edit a room

You can change a room's name and wallpaper, remove the room, and more. When you remove the room, the accessories assigned to it move to Default Room.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap  next to a room, or tap , then choose a room.
3. Tap , then tap Room Settings.

## Organize rooms into zones

You can group rooms together into a zone to easily control different areas of your home with Siri. For example, if you have a two-story home, you can assign the rooms on the first floor to a downstairs zone. Then you can say something to Siri like "Turn off the lights downstairs."

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  next to a room on the Home tab or tap , then choose a room.
3. Tap , then tap Room Settings.
4. Tap Zone, then tap an existing zone, or tap Create New to add the room to a new zone.

# Control accessories with Home on iPhone

Use the Home app and Control Center to control accessories in your home.



## Control accessories in the Home app

On the Home tab, tap an accessory's icon on the left side of the tile—a light, for example—to quickly turn the accessory on or off. Tap the accessory's name on the right side of the tile to show the accessory's control.

The available controls depend on the type of accessory. For example, with some lightbulbs, there are controls for changing colors. With your smart TV, you can choose an input source.

## Add accessories to Control Center

You can add Home scenes and accessories to Control Center for easy access to your most used accessories.

1. Open Control Center on your iPhone.<sup>Draft</sup>
2. Tap + in the top left, then tap Add A Control at the bottom.
3. Tap the Home Scene or Accessory control.
4. Tap Choose Scene or Accessory, then select a home and device or scene you want to control.

## View categories and home status

The Lights, Climate, Security, Speakers and TVs, and Water categories let you quickly access all the relevant accessories organized by room.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab.

Below your home's name, buttons show the status of accessories belonging to a category—for example, a Lights category that shows "3 on."

3. Tap one of the category buttons to show all accessories within that category, organized by room.
4. While viewing a category, tap the icon on the left side of an accessory tile to perform an action—turn a light or group of lights on or off, start playing music on a HomePod, or lock the front door.

## View Activity History

When you have a home hub using the [new version of Apple Home](#) and latest software, all the members of your home can view the activity history for accessories like garage doors, locks, and security systems. For example, you can learn when a door was unlocked and who unlocked it.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Go to Safety & Security > Home History, then tap One Month to view up to 30 days of activity.
4. In the Home tab, tap the Security category, then tap Home Activity to show the Activity History.

## Turn on Adaptive Lighting

Some HomeKit compatible lights let you adjust their color temperature, from cool blue to warm yellow. You can set supported lights to automatically adjust the color temperature throughout the day. Wake up to warm colors, stay alert and focused midday with cooler ones, and wind down at night by removing blue light. For a light that supports Adaptive Lighting, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the light's tile to show the controls.

You can also touch and hold the tile, and then choose Accessory Settings.

3. Tap , then turn on Adaptive Lighting.

*Note:* Adaptive Lighting requires a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod speakers.

## Edit home accessories

To edit accessory settings, tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap  Draft, then do any of the following:

- *Rename an accessory:* Tap  to delete the old name, then type a new one.
- *Change an accessory's icon:* Tap the icon next to the accessory's name, then select a new icon. If you don't get a choice of other icons, it means the icon can't be changed for this accessory.

## Group accessories

You can control multiple accessories with the tap of a button by grouping them.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of an accessory tile, tap  Draft, then tap Group with Other Accessories.
3. Tap the accessory you want to group with this accessory—another light in the room, for example.
4. In the Group Name field, type a name for the group.
5. Tap Done.

Turn on Include in Favorites to include the group in Favorites on the Home tab.

## Use Grid Forecast to plan energy use in Home on iPhone (U.S. only)

The electricity powering your home comes from different sources, which can include renewable energy, like solar and wind, or fossil fuels, like coal and natural gas. The sources powering your home can change throughout the day. In the Home app on your iPhone, you can see a forecast for your area that highlights cleaner times, which can help reduce carbon emissions, and less clean times, to help you choose when to use electricity.

To view the Grid Forecast, you must be connected to the internet, and [Location Services](#) must be turned on for the Home app.

*Note:* Grid Forecast is available only in the contiguous United States; it's not available in Alaska or Hawaii.

### Show Grid Forecast

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab.
3. Tap the Energy category at the top of the screen to show the Grid Forecast widget.

Green bars in the widget indicate when cleaner energy is available in your area—from 4 p.m. until 10 p.m., for example. If there are no bars, cleaner energy isn't forecast for the near future.

If you're traveling, Grid Forecast shows energy information for both your home location and the location of your iPhone.

*Note:* If you haven't added accessories to your home, the Grid Forecast widget appears when you open the Home app.

## Receive Grid Forecast notifications<sup>Draft</sup>

To receive notifications when the electricity powering your home is being generated by cleaner or more renewable sources of energy, tap ☰ in the Grid Forecast widget in the Home app, then tap Notify Me.

### Turn off Grid Forecast

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ☰, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Energy, then turn off Show Grid Forecast.

## View electricity usage and rates on iPhone (participating U.S. providers only)

You can view how much electricity your home uses in the Home app and easily track your usage over time, as well as view your electricity rate plan information. Electricity usage data is typically displayed with a lag of 24 to 72 hours.

**Note:** To use these features, you need to have a residential electrical service with a participating utility provider, and you must be the utility account owner or authorized user of the utility account.

### Set up electricity usage and rate information

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap ☰, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Energy, then tap Connect Account.

**Note:** Participating utility providers are listed under Available Providers. If your utility provider isn't listed, this feature isn't currently supported in your area.

4. Follow the onscreen instructions to link your compatible electricity account.

### Set up electricity usage and rate for multiple utility accounts

If you have multiple utility accounts or providers, you can create an additional home to add them to the Home app.

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap +, tap Add New Home, then tap Save.
3. From the Home tab, tap ☰, then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Energy, then tap Connect Account.

**Note:** Participating utility providers are listed under Available Providers. If your utility provider isn't listed, this feature isn't currently supported in your area.

5. Follow the onscreen instructions to link your additional compatible electricity account.

### Disconnect your account from electricity usage and rate information

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap ☰, then tap Home Settings.

Draft

3. Tap Energy, then tap your linked electricity account.
4. Tap Disconnect Account.

## Optimize for Energy Savings and Cleaner Energy

Using the Home app and a compatible HomeKit thermostat you can optimize your thermostat for energy savings and cleaner energy based on when you're away, on your way home, or home.

### Optimize for Energy Savings

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Enable Optimize for Energy Savings, then choose your settings and temperature range for your At Home, Sleeping, Away, and Extended Away states.
  - *Automatically Switch Modes:* Automatically switch between At Home and Away states based on the location of your device and the devices of other household members.
  - *Arrival Prediction:* Use daily routines, Apple Maps, Calendar, and more to predict arrivals.

### Turn off Optimize for Energy Savings

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Disable Optimize for Energy Savings

### Optimize for Cleaner Energy

Home can adjust the thermostat by small amounts to help reduce electricity usage while energy sources are less clean.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Enable Optimize for Cleaner Energy.

### Turn off Optimize for Cleaner Energy

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Home tab, tap your thermostat, then tap .
3. Turn off Optimize for Cleaner Energy.

## Set up HomePod in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to set up HomePod and control many HomePod settings.

To learn what you can do with iPhone and HomePod, see the following in the HomePod User Guide:

- [Set up HomePod](#) Draft
- [Play audio on HomePod using an iOS or iPadOS device](#)
- [Make Personal Requests on HomePod](#)
- [Use HomePod for phone calls](#)

*Note:* HomePod is not available in all countries or regions.

## Use Home to send and receive Intercom messages

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Intercom, then configure these settings:
  - When you can receive Intercom messages
  - Who is allowed to send or receive Intercom messages
  - Which HomePod speakers can use Intercom

*Note:* Any member of the Home can choose when they receive Intercom messages. Only a home owner or admin can choose who can send or receive Intercom messages and which HomePod speakers can use Intercom.

4. Tap Back, then tap Done.
5. Tap , say something like "Who ate the last cookie?" then tap Done.

Your Intercom message is sent to all the HomePod speakers in your home, and to the iOS, iPadOS, and watchOS devices of all members of your home who can send and receive Intercom messages.

To send a message to a HomePod in a specific room or zone, say something like "Siri, tell the office 'The movie is starting'"

See [Use HomePod as an Intercom](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

## Use HomePod and HomeKit Secure Video to announce guests

With a HomeKit Secure Video camera or doorbell, HomePod can notify you when someone you know is at the door (or send you a message if the person isn't recognized).

*Note:* To start announcing guests, first turn on [Face Recognition](#).

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Cameras & Doorbells, then tap your camera or doorbell.
4. Tap Doorbell Chime, then choose which HomePod speaker or speakers to enable.

## Use Home to add and edit HomePod alarms and timers

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile, swipe up, then do any of the following:

- *Add an alarm:* Tap New Alarm, create the alarm, then tap Done.
- *Edit an alarm:* Tap the alarm, change the time, then tap Done.
- *Turn alarms on or off:* Tap the switch next to an alarm.
- *Delete an alarm:* Tap the alarm, then tap Delete Alarm.
- *Create a new timer:* Tap New Timer, enter a timer label (optional), choose the length of the timer, then tap Start.
- *Pause and restart a timer:* Tap ⓘ; tap ⓘ to restart the timer.
- *Remove a timer:* Tap ⓘ.

## Change HomePod settings

You can assign HomePod to a different room, add an automation, create a stereo pair with two HomePod speakers of the same kind in the same room, and more.

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
3. Tap ⓘ, then configure HomePod settings.

## Use HomePod to listen for alarm sounds

HomePod can notify you when an alarm sound is detected in your home.

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap the right side of a HomePod tile.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Sound Recognition.
4. Turn on Smoke & CO Alarm, then choose which HomePods will listen for alarms.

Your HomePod will listen for certain sounds and notify you when alarm sounds may be recognized.

**Important:** Sound Recognition may detect smoke and carbon monoxide alarm sounds and send you notifications when recognized. Sound Recognition should not be relied upon in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or in high-risk or emergency situations. Sound Recognition requires the [new version of Apple Home](#).

## Add a Siri-enabled accessory

You can extend access to HomePod throughout your home by enabling Siri on compatible HomeKit accessories. If you enable Siri on these accessories, you can control them with your voice, get help with everyday questions or tasks, and play your favorite music and podcasts.

See [Set up a Siri-enabled accessory](#) in the HomePod User Guide.

# Control your home remotely with iPhone

In the Home app ⓘ, you can control your accessories even when you're away from home. To do so, you need a home hub—a device such as Apple TV (4th generation or later) or HomePod.

Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud  See All, then turn on Home.

You must be signed in to the same Apple Account on your home hub device and your iPhone.

If you have an Apple TV or HomePod, and you're signed in to the same Apple Account as your iPhone, it's set up automatically as a home hub.

## Create and use scenes in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can create scenes that allow you to control multiple accessories at once. For example, you might define a "Reading" scene that adjusts the lights, plays soft music on HomePod, closes the drapes, and adjusts the thermostat.

### Create a scene

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap +, then tap Add Scene.
3. Tap Custom, enter a name for the scene (such as "Dinner Party" or "Watching TV"), then tap Add Accessories.
4. Select the accessories you want this scene to include, then tap Done.

The first accessory you select determines the room the scene is assigned to. If you first select your bedroom lamp, for example, the scene is assigned to your bedroom.

5. Set each accessory to the state you want it in when you run the scene.

For example, for a Reading scene, you could set the bedroom lights to 100 percent, choose a low volume for the HomePod, and set the thermostat to 68 degrees.

6. Test the scene and choose whether or not to show it on the Home tab (scenes appear on the Home tab by default), then tap Done.

### Use scenes

Do one of the following:

- *Run a scene:* Tap the scene on the Home tab.

If you've decided not to show the scene on the Home tab, tap , choose the room the scene is assigned to, then tap the scene.

- *Edit a scene:* Touch and hold a scene, then tap Edit Scene.

You can change the scene's name, test the scene, add or remove accessories, and more.

## Use automations in Home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can run automations based on the time of day, your location, the activation of a sensor, or the action of an accessory. You can use preconfigured automations included with the Home app, or create automations of your own.

Thread-based accessories require a Thread-enabled home hub such as Apple TV 4K, HomePod (2nd generation), HomePod mini, or a compatible third-party Thread border router for you to run automations, receive notifications, and control accessories while away.

## Use a preconfigured automation

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, touch and hold an accessory, then tap Accessory Settings.
3. Turn on an automation.

To disable an automation, return to the accessory's setting screen, then turn it off.

## Create an automation

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap .
3. Tap Add Automation, then choose one of the following automation triggers:
  - *When arriving at or leaving a location:* Tap People Arrive or People Leave. Choose when the automation is activated by people arriving or leaving, the location, and the time the automation works.
  - *At a time of day:* Tap A Time of Day Occurs, then choose when you want this automation to run.

If you choose Sunset or Sunrise, times vary as the season changes.

You can also set an automation to only occur after sunset, which is useful for turning on lights just when they're needed.

- *When an accessory changes:* Tap An Accessory is Controlled, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You might use this, for example, to run a scene when you unlock the front door.

- *A sensor detects something:* If you've added a sensor to Home, tap A Sensor Detects Something, select an accessory, tap Next, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You might use this, for example, to turn on lights in a stairway when motion is detected nearby.

## Manage and edit automations

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the Automation tab at the bottom of the Home app screen.
3. Tap an automation, then do any of the following:
  - Enable or disable the automation
  - Choose when the automation happens
  - Add or remove accessories
  - Test the automation
  - Delete the automation

## Add a Siri shortcut

To make your automation even more efficient, you can add a Siri Shortcut to it. Draft

1. When choosing accessories to control with an automation, swipe up, then tap Convert To Shortcut.
2. Tap Next, name the automation (optional), then tap Done.

See the [Shortcuts User Guide](#).

## Set up security cameras in Home on iPhone

You can use the Home app to view video activity captured by your home's cameras. With any HomeKit-compatible camera, you can [view video streams in the Home app](#), [choose who can view those streams](#), and [set up notifications](#) when activity is detected.

See the [Home accessories website](#) for a list of compatible security cameras.

If you have one or more HomeKit Secure Video cameras, you can additionally take advantage of these features:

- *Encrypted video:* Video captured by your cameras is privately analyzed and encrypted on your home hub device (Apple TV or HomePod) and securely uploaded to iCloud so that only you and those you share it with can view it.
- *Record video:* If you subscribe to iCloud+, you can view the last 10 days of activity from one to an unlimited number of cameras. The 50 GB iCloud+ plan supports a single camera, the 200 GB iCloud+ plan supports up to five cameras, and the 2 TB, 6 TB, and 12 TB iCloud+ plans support an unlimited number of cameras.

*Note:* Video content doesn't count against your iCloud storage limit.

- *Activity Zones:* Create zones that focus your camera on the most important areas within its view.
- *Face recognition:* Receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

See [Store encrypted security camera footage in iCloud with HomeKit Secure Video](#) and [Set up HomeKit Secure Video on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.



Camera options

When you add a camera in the Home app, you can choose streaming options and assign the camera to a room. With a HomeKit Secure Video camera, you can also choose recording options. By default, up to four cameras are marked as favorites and appear on the Home tab. To edit those settings later, tap the Camera tile, then Draft

- *Room:* A camera can be located in a room inside your home, or you can create a room for an outside location such as your front porch or back yard.
- *Notifications:* Tap Status and Notifications, then choose to receive notifications [when the camera detects activity](#), changes status, or goes offline.
- *Recording options for HomeKit Secure Video cameras:* You can create separate recording settings for when you're home and when you're away. For example, when you're home, you might choose to stop streaming and recording from a camera inside your home, but continue to stream and record from an outdoor camera.

**Note:** The Home app uses the location of devices belonging to members of the home to switch between Home and Away modes. For example, when you leave home with your iPhone, the camera switches from the When Home settings to the When Away settings.

## Set up notifications

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap ⓘ, then tap Home Settings.
3. Tap Cameras & Doorbells.
4. Tap a camera, then turn on Activity Notifications.

All HomeKit-compatible cameras can send a notification when motion is detected. HomeKit Secure Video cameras can additionally send notifications based on these factors:

- The time of day
- When someone is or isn't home
- When a clip is recorded
- When any or a specific type of motion is detected

When you choose a specific motion, you receive a notification when the camera detects people, animals, or vehicles, or when a package is delivered. For a package to be detected, it must be within the camera's view after delivery.

Choosing a specific motion, rather than any motion, results in fewer clips (and fewer clip notifications) and less video to review. For example, if you choose to detect people, your camera doesn't capture the movement of leaves on a tree or a squirrel leaping from branch to branch.

## Create Activity Zones for HomeKit Secure Video cameras

You can create zones that focus your HomeKit Secure Video camera on the most important areas within its view—your front walkway but not the sidewalk behind it, for example. You can then be alerted when motion is detected in these zones.

**Note:** You can create Activity Zones only for cameras set up to record when a specific motion is detected. Activity Zones don't affect motion detection automations.

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile, then tap ⓘ.

3. Tap Select Activity Zones, then tap Draft the video to create a zone.

To have your camera detect motion only outside the zone you defined, tap Invert Zone.

4. Create any additional zones you want within the camera's view—one for the driveway and another for the mailbox, for example.

5. Tap Done.

To remove an activity zone, tap Select Activity Zones, tap inside a zone, then tap Clear.

## View video

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap the camera tile.

Live video should play automatically.

3. If you've chosen to record video with your HomeKit Secure Video camera, swipe through the timeline at the bottom of the screen to browse recorded clips.

4. Tap a clip to play it.

5. Tap Live to switch back to live video.

When you set up the camera to detect specific motion, the timeline displays unique symbols for people, animals, vehicles, and packages.

**Note:** If there are more cameras in your home than Home Hubs that can analyze the cameras' video, video captured from some of the cameras may not be analyzed.

Clips are still recorded, but they'll show , which indicates that the video wasn't analyzed for specific motion.

You can also view live and recorded video in the Home app on your Mac with macOS 10.15.1 or later.

## Choose access options

To allow other people to view video from your cameras, follow these steps:

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.

3. Below the People heading, tap a person.

4. Tap Cameras, then choose an option.

To learn how to allow other people to view video from your cameras, see [Invite others to control accessories](#).

# Use Face Recognition in Home on iPhone

With a HomeKit Secure Video camera or doorbell, you can use the Home app to receive notifications when people you've tagged in the Photos app are within the camera's view.

## Set up Face Recognition

Face Recognition identifies people by the faces that appear in your photo library or pictures of recent visitors captured by your camera or doorbell.

Draft

If you're setting up a camera or doorbell for the first time, do the following:

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. [Add the accessory](#) to the Home app.
3. In the Recognize Familiar Faces card, turn on Face Recognition, then tap Continue.
4. Choose who can access your photo library:
  - *Never*: Only faces you've added from clips in the Home app are recognized.
  - *Only Me*: Only the notifications you receive have the names of people in your photo library.
  - *Everyone in this Home*: The notifications for everyone in your home have the names of people in your photo library.
5. Tap Continue, then finish setting up the camera or doorbell.

If you have an existing doorbell or camera and want to use it to identify visitors, tap it on the Home tab, tap , tap Face Recognition, then turn on Face Recognition. Tap your photo library, then choose who can access it.

*Note*: Notifications can appear on any of the devices associated with your Apple Account.

## Identify recent visitors

You can use Face Recognition to help identify people that aren't in your photo library using a picture captured by your camera or doorbell.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. [Turn on Face Recognition](#).
3. On the Home tab, tap the camera or doorbell, then tap .
4. Tap Face Recognition, tap an unidentified person listed below Recent, then tap Add Name.
5. Add the person's name or their relationship to you—Mom or Mail Carrier, for example.
6. Choose whether to be notified when they're seen by your camera or doorbell.

*Note*: People with a face mask don't appear in this list.

## Share faces with your household

You can allow the members of your household to see the names of visitors identified in your photo library.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. [Turn on Face Recognition](#).
3. Tap , then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Cameras & Doorbells below Notifications, then tap Face Recognition.
5. Tap your photo library, then tap Everyone in this Home.

# Unlock your door with a home key on iPhone

# or Apple Watch

Some maker's locks provide the ability to unlock your door with an access code, with home key in Apple Wallet, or both.

While pairing a supported lock in the Home app, a home key is automatically added to Apple Wallet on your iPhone.

*Note:* The Home app supports both HomeKit and Matter-compatible locks.

## Set up a home key

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. [Add a supported lock](#).
3. Choose an unlocking option.
  - *Express Mode:* Unlock the door without authenticating with Face ID or Touch ID.
  - *Require Face ID or Passcode:* Hold your device near the lock, then use Face ID or Touch ID to unlock it.
4. Choose automations such as Lock After Door Closes and Lock When Leaving Home.

If the lock works with a home key, all residents of your household receive the home key automatically.

*Note:* Not all Home app-compatible locks support home key.

## Unlock your door with a home key

When you have a home key on your iPhone or Apple Watch and you've turned on [Express Mode](#), place your device near the lock to unlock it. You can use the Home app to share access with other people.

## Set up an access code for a guest

In the Home app you can set up an access code for people who need temporary access to your home.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, touch and hold the lock, tap Accessory Settings, tap Manage Access, then tap Add Guest.
3. Give the guest a name—Dog Walker, for example—then turn on the locks you want them to have access to.
4. Tap Change Access Code, enter an access code, then tap Done.
5. Touch and hold the access code, tap Share, choose a sharing option, then share the access code with the guest.

You can return to this screen to change the access code, turn off access to some or all of the locks, or remove the guest.

*Note:* Not all Home app-compatible locks support access codes.

# Configure a router in Home on iPhone

Draft  
You can use the Home app to make your smart home more secure by allowing a compatible router to control which services your HomeKit accessories can communicate with on your home Wi-Fi network and on the internet. HomeKit-enabled routers require that you have an Apple TV or HomePod set up as a home hub. See the [Home Accessories website](#) for a list of compatible routers.

## Configure your router's settings

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Set up the router with the manufacturer's app on an iPhone or iPad.
3. On the Home tab, tap , then tap Home Settings.
4. Tap Wi-Fi Network & Routers.
5. Turn on HomeKit Accessory Security, tap an accessory, then choose one of these settings:
  - *Restrict to Home*: The router only allows the accessory to connect to your home hub.  
This option may prevent firmware updates or other services.
  - *Automatic*: The router allows the accessory to connect to an automatically updated list of manufacturer-approved internet services and local devices.
  - *No Restriction*: The router allows the accessory to connect to any internet service or local device.  
This provides the lowest level of security.

## Invite others to control accessories in your home on iPhone

In the Home app, you can invite other people to control all your smart accessories, or invite a guest to control some or all of your doors, locks, and security system accessories during specific times.

*Note:* Remote access and guest access require a home hub, such as a HomePod speaker or Apple TV 4K.

### Invite residents to control accessories

Home Residents have local and optional remote access to all accessories in the home at any time.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. On the Home tab, tap , tap Add People, then tap Resident.
3. Tap  to choose people with an Apple Account from your contacts list, or enter their Apple Account email addresses in the To field.
4. Tap Invite.

5. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:

- *In the notification:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap Accept.
- *In the Home app:* (iPhone or iPad) On the Home tab, tap ⓘ, tap Home Settings, then tap the invitee's name.
- *On Apple TV:* Tap Show Me on Apple TV, then turn on one or more Apple TVs.

## Invite guests to control accessories

Home Guests have local-only access to specific doors, locks, and security system accessories on a set schedule.

*Note:* Home Guests access requires iOS 18, iPadOS 18, or later.

# FPO

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap +, tap Add People, then tap Guest.

3. Tap ⓘ to choose people with an Apple Account from your contacts list, or enter their Apple Account email addresses in the To field.

4. Select any of the following for the guest schedule:

- *Anytime:* The guest can access the selected accessories anytime.
- *Specific Dates:* The guest can only access the selected accessories on the dates specified.
- *Specific Days & Times:* The guest can only access the selected accessories on the days and during the times specified.

5. Select which doors, locks, and security system accessories the guest can access.

6. Tap Invite.

7. Ask the invitee to do one of the following:

- *In the notification:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap Accept.
- *In the Home app:* (iPhone or iPad) Tap ⓘ, tap Home Settings, then tap the invitee's name.

## Allow others to access your AirPlay-enabled speakers and TVs

1. Go to the Home app ⓘ on your iPhone.

2. On the Home tab, tap ⓘ, then tap Home Settings.

3. Tap Speaker & TV, then choose an option.

You can allow everyone, anyone on the same network, or only people you've invited to share the home. You can also require a password that allows speaker access. To learn more about HomePod speaker and Apple TV access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#) and the [Apple TV User Guide](#).

# Add more homes with iPhone

In the Home app, you can add more than one physical space—a home and a small office, for example.

1. Go to the Home app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap +, then tap Add New Home.
3. Name the home, choose its wallpaper, then tap Save.
4. To switch to another home, tap , then tap the home you want.

# iTunes Store

## Get music in the iTunes Store on iPhone

You can use the iTunes Store app to do any of the following:

- Find and buy music (see [below](#))
- Get ringtones (see [Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones](#))
- See and manage all your purchases (see [Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings](#))

*Note:* You need an internet connection to use the iTunes Store. The availability of the iTunes Store and its features varies by country or region. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

To add movies and TV shows to iPhone, see [Discover channels and apps](#).

### Find music in the iTunes Store

1. Go to the iTunes Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Music, then do any of the following:
  - *Browse by category:* Scroll to see various categories.
  - *Choose a different genre:* Tap Genres at the top left of the screen, then select one to refine your browsing.
  - *See what's popular on iTunes:* Tap Charts at the top of the screen.
  - *Search:* Tap Search, enter what you're looking for, then tap Search on the keyboard.
3. Tap an item to see more information about it.
4. To share an item or add it to your wish list, tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Share a link to the item:* Choose a sharing option.
  - *Give the item as a gift:* Tap Gift.
  - *Add the item to your wish list:* Tap Add to Wish List.

To view your wish list, tap  at the top right, then tap Wish List.

### Buy and download content

1. Go to the iTunes Store app  on your iPhone.
2. To buy an item, tap the price. If the item is free, tap Get.  
If you see  instead of a price, you already purchased the item, and you can download it again without a charge.
3. If necessary, authenticate your [Apple Account](#) with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode to complete the purchase.
4. To see the progress of a download, tap More, then tap Downloads.

## Redeem or send an App Store & iTunes Gift Card

1. Go to the iTunes Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Music, tap Featured (if necessary), then scroll to the bottom.
3. Tap Redeem or Send Gift.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

## Get ringtones, text tones, and alert tones in the iTunes Store on iPhone

In the iTunes Store app, you can purchase ringtones, text tones, and other alert tones for clock alarms and more.

### Buy new tones

1. Go to the iTunes Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap More, then tap Tones.
3. Browse by category or tap Search to find a specific song or artist.
4. Tap a tone to see more information or play a preview.
5. To buy a tone, tap the price.

### Redownload tones purchased with your Apple Account

If you bought tones on another device, you can download them again.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics (on supported models) or Sounds (on other iPhone models).
3. Below Ringtone and Alerts, tap any item.
4. Tap Download All Purchased Tones. You might not see this option if you already downloaded all the tones that you purchased or if you haven't purchased any tones.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

# Manage your iTunes Store purchases and settings on iPhone Draft

In the iTunes Store app, you can review and download music, movies, and TV shows purchased by you or other family members. You can also customize content restrictions for the iTunes Store in Settings.

## Approve purchases with Family Sharing

With Family Sharing set up, the family organizer can review and approve purchases made by other family members under a certain age. See [Turn on Ask to Buy](#).

## View and download music purchased by you or family members

1. Go to the iTunes Store app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap More, then tap Purchased.
3. If you set up Family Sharing, choose a family member to view their purchases.

*Note:* You can see purchases made by family members only if they choose to share their purchases.

4. Tap Music, find the item you want to download, then tap .

To view and download movies or TV shows purchased by you or family members, see [Manage your library in the Apple TV app](#).

## View your entire iTunes Store purchase history

To see a chronological list of the apps, songs, movies, TV shows, books, and other items purchased with your Apple Account, [view your iTunes Store purchase history](#).

In your purchase history, you can do any of the following:

- View when an order was billed to your account.
- View the date of a purchase.
- Resend email receipts.
- Report a problem with purchased content.

## Set content restrictions

After you [turn on content and privacy restrictions](#), go to Settings  > Screen Time > Content & Privacy Restrictions > App Store, Media, Web, & Games, then set any of the available restrictions. You can block explicit content, turn off music videos, restrict content by age-appropriate ratings, and more.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

## Journal

## Get started with Journal on iPhone

Learn how to use the Journal app  on iPhone to record your experiences. You can add photos, music, drawings, audio recordings, and even your current state of mind.

## Set up Journal



The first time you open Journal, follow the onscreen instructions to turn on and get customized journaling suggestions.

## Create a journal entry



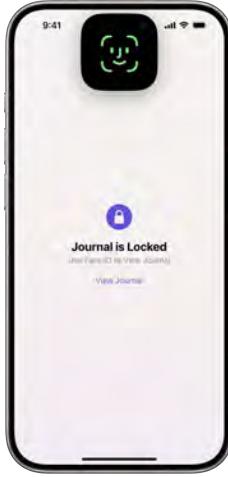
Choose a journal, then tap . Start writing or choose a journaling suggestion or reflection prompt.

## Review your journal entries



Scroll through your journal to see previous entries. To find specific entries, tap , choose a category such as Photos or Drawings, or type the text you're looking for in your entries. To find entries for a specific day, tap , then tap a date on the calendar.

## Keep your journal private



Protect your journal so only you can access it with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.

Want to learn more?

- [Write in your journal](#)
- [View and search journal entries](#)
- [Change Journal settings](#)
- [Add formatting, photos, and more](#)

## Write in your journal on iPhone

The Journal app makes it easy to capture your thoughts on everyday moments and special events. You can also get suggestions for topics to write about.

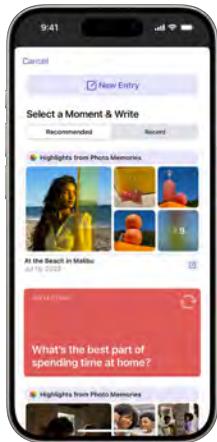
### Create a new journal

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then name the new journal.

## Create a journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal, then tap .
3. Start writing or choose a journaling suggestion or reflection prompt.



## Edit a journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Swipe left on an entry, then tap .

## Edit the entry date

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, swipe down to show the entry date, then tap the date to edit.

## Remove or add a title

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap , then tap Remove Title or Add Title.

## Delete or recover a journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Swipe left on an entry, then tap .

Deleted entries are saved for 30 days.

4. To recover an entry, tap  below the entry, then tap Recover Entry.

## Use journaling suggestions

Journaling suggestions intelligently group outings, photos, workouts, and more to help you remember and reflect on your experiences.

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.

2. Choose a journal, then tap  **Draft**

Browse the recommended suggestions or tap **Recent** to see suggestions sorted by time.

3. To start a new entry with all the suggested attachments, tap  at the bottom-right corner of the suggestion. To preview the attachments before creating the entry, tap the suggestion, then do any of the following:

- *Browse the attachments:* Swipe through the attachments.
- *Change to the list view:* To see the details for all attachments, tap .
- *Choose the attachments you want:* Tap an attachment to select or deselect it.

4. Tap **Add to Entry** to start writing or  to return to the suggestions list.

**Tip:** To delete a suggestion, touch and hold the suggestion, then tap **Remove**.

## Take action from the Home Screen

1. On the iPhone Home screen, touch and hold .

2. Choose any of the following:

- **New Entry**
- **View Suggestions**
- **Add Photos**
- **Record Audio**

## Start a journal entry from another app

When you're doing something in another app—such as listening to a song in the Music app or reading an article in the News app—you can quickly capture your thoughts in a new journal entry.

1. In the app you're using, tap  or **Share**, then tap **Journal**. (If you don't see **Journal**, you may need to [add it to the sharing options](#).)
2. Enter your thoughts, then tap **Save**.

You can review your entry and add more details later in the Journal app. See [Edit a journal entry](#).

## Add formatting, photos, and more in Journal on iPhone

You can edit your entries and add photos, drawings, videos, audio, and more.



## Format text

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap .
3. Apply bold text, italics, underline, strikethrough, bulleted or numbered lists, block quote, or font color.

## Add a drawing

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap , then start drawing.
- Tip:** To place a drawing inline with text, tap and hold where you want the drawing to go, then choose Insert Drawing.
3. Tap a tool to switch to it. (Swipe to see other tools, such as Fill, Crayon, Reed Pen, or Watercolor Brush.)  
Tap any tool a second time to change its qualities, like the thickness or opacity of a stroke.
4. When you're finished drawing, tap .

## Add photos, videos, locations, audio recordings, and more

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, do any of the following:
  - *Get suggestions from your recent activities:* Tap .
  - *Choose photos and videos from your library:* Tap .
  - *Take a new photo or video:* Tap .
  - *Record audio:* Tap .
  - *Add a map location:* Tap .

When you add a location, the entry will be visible in Places.

- *Log your state of mind:* Tap . See [Journal for your wellbeing](#).
- *View an attachment in full screen:* Tap the thumbnail.
- *Reorder attachments:* Touch and hold a thumbnail, then drag it to a different position.
- *Remove an attachment:* Tap  in the top-right corner of the thumbnail.

You can record audio and have your words transcribed in a journal entry. Audio transcription is available in English only (excluding Singapore and India locales).

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap , tap , then start speaking.
3. When you're done, tap .
4. Tap the audio recording, then tap  to review the transcription.
5. To add the text to the entry, tap , then tap Add Transcript to Entry.

## Journal for your wellbeing on iPhone

You can log your state of mind in the Journal app. You can also automatically add the time you spent journaling as mindful minutes in the Health app.



### Log your state of mind in your journal

You can reflect on how you're feeling and log your momentary emotions in your journal.

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. While composing an entry, tap .
3. Drag the slider to indicate how you're feeling, then tap .
4. Tap any words that describe how you're feeling, swipe up to see more words, then tap .
5. Tap any words that describe what's having the biggest impact on you, then tap .

Your state of mind will be added to Health, where you can review its history over time. See [Log your state of mind in Health](#).

### Allow the Health app to access your state of mind and mindful minutes in Journal

You can automatically add the time you spent journaling as mindful minutes in the Health app.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Journal. Draft
3. Tap Health Access, then tap Data Access & Devices.
4. Tap Journal, then turn on Mindful Minutes and State of Mind.

## Build a habit with Journal on iPhone

With Journal, you can keep track of your journaling goals with the Insights view and build new habits.

### Track your journaling with Insights

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.

At the top of your journal is your current streak along with other metrics and insights.

2. Tap Insights, then tap any tile to see more details.



### Set a journaling schedule

You can remember to write with journaling notifications.

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Above the Insights summary, tap , then tap Notifications.
3. Tap Customize Notifications, then choose Custom to set a weekly schedule or tap Smart to receive notifications based on your routine and location.

### Use the Journal widget

Add a widget to your Home Screen or Lock Screen with your current streak or writing prompts that change throughout the day, so you can reflect on what's going on in the moment.

1. On the iPhone Home Screen or Lock Screen, [add a Journal widget](#).
2. To change the widget, touch and hold the widget, then tap Edit Widget.
3. Tap the widget to select from different writing prompts, start a new entry, or see details about your current streak.

## View and search your journal entries on iPhone

The Journal app on iPhone you can search for text in your entries and filter for details such as photos, drawings, and locations. You can also bookmark entries to revisit later.



## Search your journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Find specific entries:* Tap , then choose a category such as Photos or Reflections or type the text you're looking for in your entries.
  - *Sort entries:* Tap , tap Sort By, then choose Entry Date or Moment Date.
  - *Find entries for a specific day:* Tap  to show your insights, tap , then tap a date on the calendar.

## View entries by location

You can see your entries based on their location with the map view.

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Insights, tap Places.

To zoom in, double tap the map.
3. Tap  to return to your journal.

**Note:** Entries that include a location or a photo are added to the map. See [Add photos, videos, locations, audio recordings, and more](#)

## Bookmark important journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.

3. Swipe right on an entry, then tap  Draft

**Tip:** To see only the bookmarked entries, tap , then tap Bookmarked.



## Print and export entries in Journal on iPhone

In the Journal app, you can print and export individual entries or your entire journal.

### Print a single journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Scroll to the entry you want to print, then tap  below the entry.
4. Tap Print.

### Print multiple journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Tap , at the top of the screen, then tap Print.
4. Choose All Entries or select a date range, then tap Print.

### Export a single journal entry

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Scroll to the entry you want to export, then tap  below the entry.
4. Tap Print, then tap .

Choose an app such as Notes, Files, or Messages, or tap Save to Files

### Export multiple journal entries

1. Go to the Journal app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose a journal or tap All Entries.
3. Tap , at the top of the screen.
4. Tap Export, then choose Export.
5. Tap  to choose a location, then tap  Draft.

# Change your Journal settings on iPhone

Draft

You can customize the settings for the Journal app. Personalize the journaling suggestions you receive, lock your journal, set a schedule for journaling, and more.

## Turn journaling suggestions on or off

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Journaling Suggestions.

## Customize journaling suggestions

Do any of the following:

- *Customize the privacy settings:* Go to Settings > Privacy & Security > Journaling Suggestions, then turn on or off any of the categories.  
Suggestions use data from apps and services you turn on; data used for suggestions is private and stored on your iPhone. For more information, see the [Journaling Suggestions & Privacy website](#).
- *Change the notification settings:* Go to Settings > Notifications > Journaling Suggestions.
- *Create new entries without viewing suggestions:* Go to Settings > Apps > Journal, then turn off Show Suggested Moments.

## Add a title and date to new journal entries

Do any of the following:

- *Add a title to new entries:* Go to Settings > Apps > Journal, tap Add Entry Title, then choose Always, Only for Moments, or Never.
- *Use the date from the moment as the entry date:* Go to Settings > Apps > Journal, then turn on Always Use Moment Date.

## Lock your journal

You can keep your journal private so only you can access it with with Face ID, Touch ID, or your passcode.



To lock your journal, use any of the following methods:

- *From the Home Screen or App Library:* See [Lock or hide an app](#).

- *In the Journal app:* Above the Insights summary, tap  Draft, then tap Lock Journal.
- *In the Settings app:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Journal, then tap Lock Journal.

## Save photos and videos taken in Journal to the Photos app

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Journal.
3. Turn on Save to Photos.

## Turn Journal notifications on or off

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Journaling Suggestions.

## Store your journal entries in iCloud

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All, then turn on Journal.

To back up without using iCloud, see the Apple Support article [About encrypted backups on your iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch](#).

## Magnifier

### Magnify or describe things around you with Magnifier on iPhone

In the Magnifier app, you can use your iPhone like a magnifying glass to zoom in on text or objects around you.



#### Magnify nearby text or objects

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Point the iPhone camera at the text or object you want to magnify, then drag the slider to zoom in or out.

3. You can also use any of the following controls:

- Tap ⓘ to switch between your default controls and custom sets of controls you've defined for recurring tasks or situations (called *activities*). See [Set your preferred controls for an activity](#).
- Tap ⓘ to [temporarily freeze the frame](#).
- Tap ⓘ to [add more controls](#), including [Detection Mode](#), or edit activities you've created.

**Tip:** Set up a shortcut to quickly open Magnifier by clicking or pressing an iPhone button or tapping the back of iPhone, or from Control Center. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).

On [supported models](#), you can also customize the Camera Control to open Magnifier. See [Use the Camera Control to open another app](#).

## Temporarily freeze the frame

You can temporarily capture what's in the frame, without saving it to Photos.

1. Go to the Magnifier app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap ⓘ, then do one of the following:
  - Tap ⓘ to [format text from a captured frame for easier reading](#) or to [listen to your captured text](#).
  - Tap ⓘ for more options, such as sharing the captured frame or saving it to your photos.
  - Tap ⓘ to unfreeze the frame and return to the live Magnifier lens.

## View your captured text in a format for easier reading

If you capture a frame that contains text, you can view it in a format adapted for easier reading. You can even adjust fonts, layouts, and background colors.

1. Go to the Magnifier app ⓘ on your iPhone.

2. Tap ⓘ to capture the frame, then tap ⓘ.

Magnifier alerts you if no text is detected in the frame you captured.

3. Tap ⓘ, then tap [Customize Reader](#).

You may need to tap the page for ⓘ to appear.

4. Select a theme, then tap [Edit](#).

5. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Text Color*: Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
- *Background Color*: Choose a color or tap Custom Color.
- *Text Size*: Drag the slider left or right to make the text smaller or larger.
- *Font*: Choose a font.
- *High Legibility Characters*: Turn on High Legibility Characters.
- *Bold Text*: Turn on Bold Text.
- *Line Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Word Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Character Spacing*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Readable Content Width*: Choose Default, Loose, or Open.
- *Hyperlinks*: Turn on hyperlinks or choose a color.
- *Playback*: Turn playback highlight on, choose a style, or choose a color.
- *Rename*: Enter a name for the settings you choose.
- *Reset to Default*: Reset all themes to their default settings.

**Tip:** Rename a theme with your custom settings so you can easily find it and reuse it later.

## Listen to your captured text

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap  to capture the frame, then tap .

Magnifier alerts you if no text is detected in the frame you captured.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Listen to the text*: Tap the Play button.
- *Pause the text*: Tap the Pause button.
- *Skip forward or backward*: Tap the rounded arrows next to the Pause or Play button.
- *Increase or decrease the speed*: Tap the 1x button, then select a speed.

**Note:** You can hide or show audio controls in Accessibility Reader by tapping , then tap Hide Audio Controls or Show Audio Controls. (You may need to tap the page for  to appear.)

## Get live descriptions of your surroundings

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use Detection Mode in the Magnifier app on iPhone to scan your surroundings and get live descriptions of the scenes detected in the camera view. Live descriptions are available as text or speech.

**Important:** Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation.

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap  to start Detection Mode. Draft

If you don't see , you can add it. See [Customize controls](#).

3. Touch and hold , select Scenes, then do any of the following:

- *On an iPhone with a LiDAR Scanner:* On [supported iPhone models](#), detect [people](#), [doors](#), or [furniture](#).
- *On other iPhone models:* Detect text in the camera frame and have it [read out loud](#) or [point your finger at text to have it spoken](#).

4. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers.

Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

If you use VoiceOver, you can turn on Live Recognition from any screen on iPhone and get descriptions of your surroundings without going to the Magnifier app. See [Get live descriptions of your surroundings with VoiceOver](#).

## Customize controls in Magnifier on iPhone

You can choose and customize the controls that are shown in the Magnifier app.

### Add or remove controls

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then do any of the following:

- *Show or hide Activities, Capture, or Detection Mode:* Tap [Activities](#), [Capture](#), or [Detect](#), then turn Show in Control Panel on or off.
- *Add or remove other controls:* Tap  or  next to a control.

You can choose up to two primary controls. Primary controls appear on the main screen when you open Magnifier. If you add more than two controls, you can swipe up on the control panel at the bottom of the screen to access secondary controls.

- *Reorder other controls:* Drag  next to a control to move it up or down.

Control	Description
 Brightness	Adjust the brightness.
 Cameras	Switch between the front and rear cameras, or choose Close-up when you need to see something very small that's very close to the camera.  <i>Note:</i> Close-up is available on iPhone 13 Pro and iPhone 13 Pro Max or later.
 Contrast	Adjust the contrast.
 Filters	Apply a color filter.  When you add the Filters control, you can select just the filters you use most often.
 Flashlight	Turn on the flashlight.
 Focus Lock	Lock the magnifier focus.

Control	Draft Description
Zoom	Zoom in and out.

## Set your preferred controls for an activity

You can save the controls you use for recurring tasks or situations, called *activities*, and switch between different activities as needed. For example, you could create an activity for reading a menu at a restaurant.

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Save as New Activity to create a new activity using the current controls.
3. Enter a name for the activity, then tap Done.

## Customize settings for live scene descriptions

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Detect.
3. Tap Scenes, then turn on any combination of Labels or Speech feedback.
4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap , tap it again, then tap Done.

## Detection Mode

### Detect people around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect when people are nearby and get information about how close they are. This can be useful if you want to maintain a physical or social distance from others.

**Important:** Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of people is only available on [supported iPhone models](#).

#### Detect people near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to start Detection Mode.  
If you don't see , you can add it. See [Customize controls](#).
3. Touch and hold , then make sure People is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect your surroundings. When a person is detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent the closer the person is to you.  
If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See [Adjust the volume](#).
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

## Customize the settings for detecting people

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Detect.
3. Tap People, then customize any of the following:
  - *Units*: Choose Meters or Feet.
  - *Sound pitch distance*: Tap  or  to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When people are detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
  - *Feedback*: Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and another person.
4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap , tap it again, then tap Done.

## Detect furniture around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect furniture around you. You can get information about how far you are from furniture, and when chairs or sofas are detected, find out if they're occupied.

**Important:** Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of furniture is only available on [supported iPhone models](#).

### Detect furniture near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to start Detection Mode.  
If you don't see , you can add it. See [Customize controls](#).
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Furniture is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect furniture around you. When furniture is detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent as you get closer to the furniture.  
If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See [Adjust the volume](#).
5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

### Customize the settings for detecting furniture

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Detect.

3. Tap Furniture, then customize any Draft of the following:

- *Units*: Choose Meters or Feet.
- *Sound pitch distance*: Tap  or  to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When furniture is detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
- *Feedback*: Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and the furniture.
- *Announce Seat Occupancy*: Turn on Announce Seat Occupancy to get information about the number of people occupying chairs and sofas.

4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap <, tap it again, then tap Done.

## Detect doors around you using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app on iPhone to detect doors around you. You can get information about how far you are from the door and hear about the door's attributes, including how to open it.

**Important:** Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Detection of doors is only available on [supported iPhone models](#).



### Detect doors near you

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap  to start Detection Mode.

If you don't see , you can add it. See [Customize controls](#).

3. Touch and hold , then make sure Doors is selected.

4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect doors around you. When doors are detected nearby, you're notified with sounds, speech, or haptic feedback. The feedback becomes more frequent as you get closer to the door.

If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See [Adjust the volume](#).

5. To temporarily pause detection, **Draft** double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

## Customize the settings for detecting doors

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Detect.
3. Tap Doors, then customize any of the following:
  - *Units*: Choose Meters or Feet.
  - *Sound pitch distance*: Tap  or  to adjust the distance for sound feedback. When a door is detected within this distance, the pitch of the sound feedback increases.
  - *Feedback*: Turn on any combination of Labels, Sounds, Speech, and Haptics. If you turn on Speech, iPhone speaks the distance between you and the door.
  - *Color*: Select a color to outline detected doors.
  - *Back tap*: When you double-tap the back of your iPhone, you can hear more information about doors around you.
  - *Door Attributes*: Turn on any combination of door attributes, such as the size of the detected door, how to open the door, and if the door is currently open.
  - *Door Decorations*: Turn on Door Decorations to get information about text and signs on or near the detected door, such as a sign for an accessible entrance or a restroom.
4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap , tap it again, then tap Done.

## Detect text around you and have it read out loud using Magnifier on iPhone

If you're blind or have low vision, you can use the Magnifier app to aim your iPhone camera at nearby text and have it spoken out loud. You can even point your finger at the specific text you want spoken.

**Important:** Detection Mode should not be relied on in high-risk or emergency situations, in circumstances where you may be harmed or injured, or for navigation. Text Detection and Point & Speak are not available in all languages.



## Detect text in the camera frame and have it read out loud

You can use the Magnifier app to detect text in the field of view of your iPhone camera and have it read out loud.

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to start Detection Mode.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Text is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect text around you.

If you don't hear speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See [Adjust the volume](#).

5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

## Point your finger at text to have it spoken

You can use the Magnifier app to point your finger at text near you and have your iPhone speak it out loud. This can be especially useful when you need to interact with an object that has text labels, such as a digital screen at a grocery store self-checkout, or dials, buttons, or keypads on household appliances or ATMs.

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to start Detection Mode.
3. Touch and hold , then make sure Point & Speak is selected.
4. Position iPhone so the rear camera can detect the text, then point your finger to identify which text to read.

If you don't hear sound or speech feedback, make sure Silent mode isn't on. See [Adjust the volume](#).

5. To temporarily pause detection, double-tap the screen with two fingers. Double-tap again with two fingers to resume detection. To stop Detection Mode, tap .

## Customize settings for Text Detection or Point & Speak

1. Go to the Magnifier app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , then tap Detect. To detect text in other languages, turn on Detect Languages.

Draft
3. Tap Text or Point & Speak, then customize any of the following:
  - *Detection Feedback*: Turn on any combination of Labels and Speech. For Point & Speak, you can also turn on Sound and Haptic feedback.
  - *Location*: For Point & Speak, tap Under (to read text under your fingertip) or Above (to read text directly above your finger).
  - *Automatic Flashlight*: When your environment is too dark to detect text, have Magnifier turn the flashlight on for 10 seconds.
  - *Border and Color*: For Point & Speak, outline the text you're pointing to in a color of your choice.
4. To return to the live Magnifier lens, tap , tap it again, then tap Done.

Text Detection and Point & Speak work with VoiceOver. See [Turn on and practice VoiceOver](#).

## Set up shortcuts for Live Recognition on iPhone

You can set up a shortcut to quickly start [Live Recognition](#) when VoiceOver is on. If VoiceOver is off, the shortcut opens the Magnifier app  in [Detection Mode](#).

- *Use a VoiceOver gesture*: When VoiceOver is on, triple-tap the screen with four fingers to turn Live Recognition on or off. To assign a different gesture, go to Settings  > Accessibility > VoiceOver > Commands > Touch Gestures.
- *Triple-click the side button or Home button*: Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Accessibility Shortcut, then select Live Recognition. See [Quickly turn accessibility features on or off](#).
- *Tap the back of iPhone*: Go to Settings  > Accessibility > Touch > Back Tap, choose Double Tap or Triple Tap, then choose Live Recognition. See [Back tap](#).
- *Press the Action button*: Customize the Action button to start Live Recognition. See [Use and customize the Action button](#).

*Note:* The Action button is available on [supported iPhone models](#).

## Mail

### Add or remove email accounts

### Add and remove email accounts on iPhone

To send and receive email using the Mail app , you need to add the email accounts you want to use. When you first open Mail, you're asked to set up an account. At any time, you can add additional email accounts to your iPhone, or remove email accounts you no longer need.

#### Add an email account

You can add one or more email accounts to the Mail app so that you can receive all your email in one place and easily send email from any of your accounts.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Enter your email address, tap Next, then enter your email account information.

You can also tap "choose from a list" under the email address field to select the email service you want to use—for example, iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, or Gmail (Google).

If your email service isn't listed, tap Add Other Account, tap Mail Account, then enter your email account information.

**Note:** If you set up multiple accounts, you can choose which account you want to send from when composing your email message. See [Send email](#).

## Set a fetch schedule for your email account

If you add an account that doesn't support Push notifications, you can set a schedule to check for new emails for the account.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then tap Fetch New Data.
4. Under Fetch, choose a schedule.

If you choose Automatically, new data is downloaded when your iPhone is charging and connected to Wi-Fi.

## Temporarily stop using an email account

If you want to temporarily stop sending and receiving email from an account on your iPhone, you can turn it off in Settings. You can easily turn it back on at any time.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, tap the email account you want to turn off.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Turn off an iCloud email account:* Turn off "Use on this iPhone."
  - *Turn off another email account:* Turn off Mail.

**Tip:** You can choose if you want to continue using other apps with this account—including Contacts, Calendars, and Reminders. Turn each individual app on or off.

## Delete an email account

You can remove an email account from the Mail app and from all the apps that use it on your iPhone.

**Note:** This action doesn't cancel the email account; it just removes it from your iPhone. To close the account completely, visit your email account provider.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail. Draft
3. Tap Mail Accounts, tap the email account you want to remove.
4. Tap Sign Out or Delete Account.

**Note:** If you change your mind later, you can add the email account back to your iPhone. See [Add an email account](#).

## Add the Mail app back to your Home Screen

If you don't see the Mail app on your Home Screen, you can find it in the App Library and add it back.

1. On the Home Screen, swipe left until you see the App Library.
2. Enter "Mail" in the search field.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Add to Home Screen.

To rearrange your Home Screen so it's just right for you, see [Move apps and widgets on the Home Screen](#).

## Set up a custom email domain with iCloud Mail on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can add up to five custom email domains and create email addresses for those domains on your iPhone. You can then send and receive email in the Mail app  on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac, in your Mail account on iCloud.com, and in an email app on a Windows device.

You need to have a primary iCloud Mail address before you can add a custom email domain on iPhone. See [Create a primary email address for iCloud Mail](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

To learn more, see [Personalize iCloud Mail with a custom email domain and share with others](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

**Note:** Make sure you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#) on each device. If you have devices where you're not signed in to your Apple Account or that have the Mail feature turned off, you won't be able to see your custom email domains and mail on those devices.

## Add a custom email domain to iCloud Mail

You can add a custom email domain you already own to iCloud Mail, or buy a new one.

**Note:** You need to have a primary iCloud Mail address before you can add a custom email domain on iPhone. See [Create a primary email address for iCloud Mail](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Mail (under Saved to iCloud), then make sure "Use on this iPhone" is turned on.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap one of the following:
  - *Buy a Domain:* Choose this option if you don't yet have a custom domain. After you purchase it, you can create custom email addresses.
  - *Use a Domain You Own:* Choose this option if you already have a domain, and you want to use it with iCloud Mail. You can configure email addresses you already have at that domain, and create more.

Draft

### 3. Follow the onscreen instructions. Draft

If you're adding a domain you already own, some registrars require you to change DNS records to set up your domain. See the Apple Support article [Set up an existing domain with iCloud Mail](#).

## Import existing email messages

After you or a member of your Family Sharing group sets up a custom email domain for iCloud Mail, you can use iCloud.com to import existing email messages from your previous email provider (not available for all email providers). See [Import existing email messages to your custom iCloud Mail address](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

## Create and delete email addresses

After you add a custom email domain, you can easily create and delete email addresses for that domain.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Mail (under Saved to iCloud), then make sure "Use on this iPhone" is turned on.
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap the domain you want to make changes to.
3. Tap Manage Email Addresses, then do one of the following:
  - *Add a new email address:* Tap Create Email Address, enter the new address, then tap Continue.
  - *Delete an email address:* Swipe left on an email address, tap Delete, then tap Remove.
  - *Add People:* Tap to invite someone to your custom email domain.

## Remove a custom email domain

If you no longer want to use a custom email domain, you can remove it using your iPhone. When you remove a custom email domain, you can't send or receive email for any addresses at that domain in Mail.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Mail (under Saved to iCloud).
2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then tap Edit next to Your Domains.
3. Tap , then tap Delete.
4. If you're moving your domain to a new provider, make sure to do the following:
  - Go to your domain registrar to update the domain records to your new email provider and remove iCloud-related records.
  - Set up any email addresses you want to continue using with your new provider.

*Note:* When you remove a custom email domain, you can still send and receive email from your primary @icloud.com address.

## Allow all incoming messages to your domain

You can use your iCloud Mail email address as a catch-all address. This allows you to receive all messages sent to your custom email domain, even if the exact address they were sent to hasn't already been created.

1. Go to Settings  > [your name] > iCloud > Mail (under Saved to iCloud).

Draft

2. Tap Custom Email Domain, then **Draft** tap your custom domain.

3. Turn on Allow All Incoming Messages.

If the domain owner allows all incoming messages, any messages that aren't sent to an active email address go to the domain owner's inbox. If this setting isn't turned on, those messages are returned to the sender.

**Note:** Messages sent to deleted email addresses are automatically returned to the sender.

## Check your email in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can read email messages, add contacts, and preview some of the contents of a message without opening it.



### Read an email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the inbox, tap the message you want to read.

### Use Remind Me to come back to a Primary message later

If you don't have time to handle a primary message right away, you can set a time and date to receive a reminder and bring the message back to the top of your inbox.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Primary message, tap , tap Remind Me, then choose when to be reminded.

### Quickly mark multiple emails as read

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. While viewing a message list, tap , tap Select, then select the messages you want to mark.

**Important:** When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

3. Tap [X] at the bottom of the message list, then choose Mark as Read.

**Note:** The number of unread messages shown on your Home Screen reflects the number of unread messages in your Primary category. To show your total number of unread messages in all categories, go to Settings  > Notifications > Mail > Customize Notifications, then turn on All Unread Messages.

### Preview a Primary message and a list of options

If you want to see what a Primary message <sup>Draft</sup> is about but not open it completely, you can preview it.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the Primary message list, touch and hold a message to preview its contents and see a list of options for replying, filing it, and more. See [Perform quick actions](#).

## Show a longer preview for every email

In your inbox, Mail displays two lines of text for each email message by default. You can choose to see more lines of text without opening the message.

Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail > Preview (below Message List), then choose up to five lines.

## Show the whole conversation

Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail, then turn on Organize by Thread.

**Tip:** You can also change other settings here—such as Collapse Read Messages or Most Recent Message on Top.

## Show To and Cc labels in your Inbox

Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail, then turn on Show To/Cc Labels (below Message List).

You can also view the To/Cc mailbox, which gathers all mail addressed to you. To show or hide it, tap  in the upper-left corner of the Mail app until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit, then select "To or Cc."

## Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP

You can save someone to your contacts to easily find their email messages again in the future, or make them a VIP so any message you receive from them is automatically starred.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In a message, tap a person's name or email address, then do one of the following:
  - *Add a new contact:* Tap View Contact Card, then tap Create New Contact. Fill in any other contact information, then tap [X].
  - *Add the email address to an existing contact:* Tap View Contact Card, then tap Add to Existing Contact. Select a contact, then tap [X].
  - *Add to your VIP list:* Tap Add to VIP.

## Show or hide contact photos

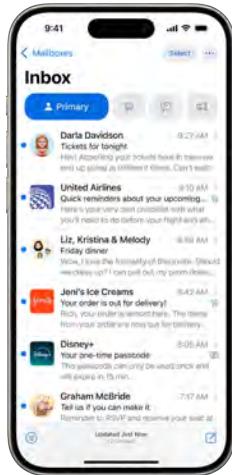
1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap  at the top of the screen, then select or deselect Show Contact Photos.

# Use categories in Mail on iPhone

The Mail app automatically sorts your email messages into categories to help you find and manage messages more quickly (not available in all countries or regions).

- **Primary:** Find personal messages and time-sensitive information.
- **Transactions:** Keep track of your confirmations, receipts, and shipping notices.
- **Updates:** Catch up on news, newsletters, and social updates.
- **Promotions:** Browse your coupon and sales emails.

**Note:** When a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message includes time-sensitive information, it will also be included in the Primary message list.



## View all messages from a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions sender

When you tap a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, a digest view of messages from that sender opens. For example, if you open a Transactions message, all of the other Transactions messages from that sender will appear when you scroll up or down.

**Note:** You can take action on all messages from a sender when you open the digest view.



1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a Transactions , Updates , or Promotions  message.

All of your messages in that category from the same sender appear in a list.

3. To view all of your messages from a sender, tap  at the top of the sender's message list, then choose Show All Messages.

**Note:** Primary messages are not grouped by sender.

To view only one Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message when scrolling, go back to your inbox, tap , then deselect Group by Sender.

## Change the category of a sender

You can manually categorize messages from a sender into the category of your choosing.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Recategorize Primary messages from a sender:* Tap a Primary message, tap , then choose Categorize Sender.
  - *Recategorize Transactions, Updates, or Promotions messages from a sender:* Tap a Transactions , Updates , or Promotions  message. Tap  at the top of the message list, then choose Categorize Sender.
3. Choose a category, then tap Continue.

All current and future messages from the sender will appear in the category you choose.

## Turn off categories

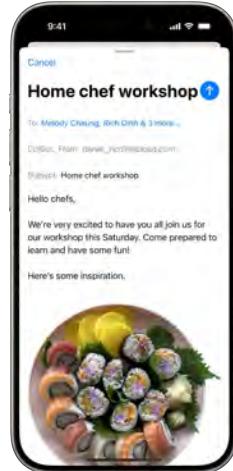
**Tip:** You can quickly view all emails in an inbox. Swipe left on the categories at the top of the inbox to open All Mail.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap  at the top of the screen, then choose List View.

## Write and send email

### Send email in Mail on iPhone

You can write, send, and schedule email messages from any of your email accounts.



### Write and send an email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap in the email, then type your message.

4. To change the formatting, tap  above the keyboard.

You can change the font style and color of text, use a bold or italic style, add a bulleted or numbered list, and more.

5. Tap  to send your message.

**Tip:** You can create and add stickers to messages as you compose them. See [Add emoji, Memoji, and stickers](#).

## Add recipients

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap , tap the To field, then type the names of recipients.

As you type, Mail automatically suggests people from your Contacts.

You can also tap  to open Contacts and add recipients from there.

3. If you want to send a copy to other people, tap the Cc/Bcc field, then do any of the following:

- Tap the Cc field, then enter the names of people you're sending a copy to.
- Tap the Bcc field, then enter the names of people you don't want other recipients to see.

**Tip:** After you enter recipients, you can reorder their names in the address fields, or drag them from one address field to another—for example, to the Bcc field if you decide you don't want their names to appear.

## Add a hyperlink to an email message

1. In Safari  or another web browser, copy the URL of a webpage.

2. As you compose a message in Mail , highlight the text you want to link.

3. Tap Paste.

## Edit a link in an email draft

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.

2. In a message you're writing, tap a link or linked text, then tap .

3. Do any of the following:

- *Show Link Preview:* Change the hyperlinked text to a rich embedded website preview image.
- *Open Link:* Go to that website in a web browser.
- *Edit Link:* Change the URL of the link.
- *Remove Link:* Delete the link from your message draft.
- *Edit Text Description:* Change the text that's linked.

## Use Camera to capture an email address

You can use Live Text to scan an email address printed on a business card, poster, and more using the Mail app on iPhone. This allows you to quickly begin emails without entering an address manually.

1. Go to the Camera app  on your iPhone.

2. Position iPhone so the email address **Draft** appears within the camera frame.
3. Tap the email address, then tap  in the lower-right corner of the camera field.
4. To draft a message, tap the email address in the lower-left side of the camera field.

**Tip:** You can also capture an email address from a photo. See [Use Live Text to interact with content in a photo or video](#).

## Schedule an email with Send Later

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In a message you're writing, touch and hold , then choose when you want to send the message.

To see more options, tap Send Later.

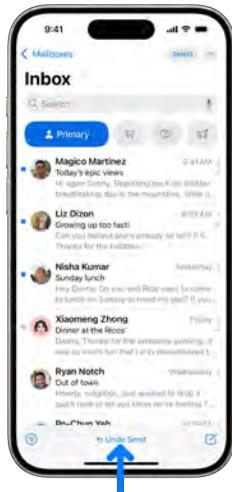
## Send an email from a different account

If you have more than one email account, you can specify which account to send email from.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In your message draft, tap the Cc/Bcc, From field.
3. Tap the From field, then choose an account.

# Unsend email with Undo Send in Mail on iPhone

You can change your mind and unsend an email message in the Mail app . You can also set a delay for all emails to give yourself a little more time to unsend them.



## Undo a sent email

You have 10 seconds to change your mind after you send an email message.

Tap Undo Send at the top of the inbox to pull back the message.

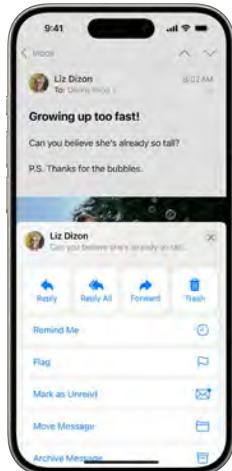
## Delay sending emails

You can give yourself a little more time to change your mind and unsend emails by setting a delay.

Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail, tap Under **Draft** Send Delay, then choose a length of time to delay outgoing email messages.

## Reply to and forward emails in Mail on iPhone

You can reply to or forward emails in the Mail app.



### Reply to an email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the message, tap , then do one of the following:
  - *Reply to just the sender:* Tap Reply.
  - *Reply to the sender and the other recipients:* Tap Reply All.
3. Type your response.

### Quote some text when you reply to an email

When you reply to an email message, you can include text from the sender to clarify what you're responding to.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the sender's message, touch and hold the first word of the text, then drag to the last word. (See [Select, cut, copy, and paste text](#).)
3. Tap , tap Reply, then type your message.

**Note:** To turn off the indentation of quoted text, go to Settings  > Apps > Mail > Increase Quote Level (below Composing), then turn off Increase Quote Level.

### Forward an email

You can send an email message forward to new recipients.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the message, tap , then tap Forward.

If there are attachments in the original message—like photos or documents—you can decide whether to include them in the forwarded message. Choose Include or Don't Include.

3. Enter the email addresses of the new recipients.

4. Tap in the message, then type your response. The forwarded message appears below.

## Follow up on emails

If you send an email message and don't receive a response for several days, the message automatically moves back to the top of your inbox to help you remember to follow up.

To turn off Follow Up Suggestions, go to Settings  > Apps > Mail, then turn off Follow Up Suggestions.

## Set up an automatic reply in Mail

On [iCloud.com](#), you can set up an automatic reply to respond to incoming email messages or automatically forward messages to another inbox. See [Set up an automatic reply in Mail on iCloud.com](#).

# Save a draft in Mail on iPhone

You can save a draft to finish later and see all draft emails from all of your accounts.

## Save a draft for later

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In a message you're writing, tap [X], then tap Save Draft.

To resume work on a message you saved as a draft, touch and hold , then select a draft.

You can also swipe down on the title bar of a message you're writing to save it for later. When you're ready to return to your message, tap its title at the bottom of the screen.

**Tip:** You can also hand off unfinished emails between your iPhone and your Mac. See [Hand off tasks between devices](#).

## Show draft emails from all your accounts

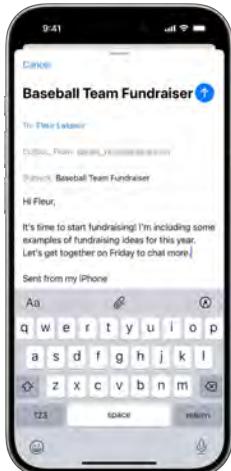
If you have more than one email account, you can show draft emails from all your accounts.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Edit at the top of the list.
4. Turn on the All Drafts mailbox.

# Work with attachments

## Add email attachments in Mail on iPhone

**Draft**  
You can attach photos, videos, and documents to an email message. You can also scan a paper document and send it as a PDF attachment, or draw directly in a message and send the drawing as an attachment. Depending on the file size, the attachment might appear inline with the text in the message or as  at the end of the message.



## Attach a photo, video, or document to an email

You can attach and send documents, videos, and photos in your email messages for recipients to easily download and save.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the message where you want to insert the attachment, then tap  above the keyboard.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Attach a document:* Tap , then locate the document in [Files](#).  
In Files, tap Recent, Shared, or Browse at the bottom of the screen, then tap a file, location, or folder to open it.
  - *Attach a saved photo or video:* Tap , then choose a photo or video. Tap [X] to return to the message.
  - *Take a new photo or video and attach it to the message:* Tap , then take a new photo or video. Tap Use Photo or Use Video to insert it into your message, or tap Retake if you want to reshoot it.

**Note:** If your file exceeds the maximum size allowed by your email account, follow the onscreen instructions to send it using Mail Drop. See the Apple Support article [Mail Drop limits](#).

## Scan and attach a document to an email

You can scan a paper document and send it as a PDF.

1. Go to the Mail app .
2. Tap in the message where you want to insert the scanned document, then tap  above the keyboard.
3. Tap  above the keyboard.
4. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen—iPhone automatically captures the page.

To capture the page manually, tap  or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap .

5. Tap Retake or Keep Scan, scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.
6. To make changes to the saved scan, tap it, then do any of the following:
  - *Crop the image:* Tap .
  - *Apply a filter:* Tap .
  - *Rotate the image:* Tap .
  - *Delete the scan:* Tap .

## Create and attach a drawing to your email

You can draw in an email message to demonstrate ideas that are hard to put into words. Your drawing is added to the message as an attachment for recipients to view and download.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap in the message where you want to insert a drawing, then tap  above the keyboard.
3. Choose a drawing tool and color, then write or draw with your finger.  
See [Write and draw in documents with Markup](#).
4. When you're finished, tap [X], then tap Insert Drawing.

To resume work on a drawing, tap the drawing in the message, then tap .

## Download email attachments in Mail on iPhone

You can download attachments that are sent to you in email messages or easily search for messages with attachments in your mailboxes.

### Download an attachment sent to you

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.

2. In a message, touch and hold the **Draft** attachment, then do one of the following:

- *Save it in the Photos app:* Choose Save Image.
- *Save it in the Files app:* Choose Save to Files.
- *Open it with another app:* Tap Share , then choose the app.



**Tip:** You can identify and learn more about objects in photos you receive. Touch and hold the photo, then choose Look Up. See [Identify objects in your photos and videos](#).

## Quickly fill out forms you receive in Mail

You can use AutoFill to quickly fill out forms you receive in the Mail app, and then send the form back to the original sender without leaving Mail.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap the attachment to open the document.
3. Tap , then tap a blank field to enter text using the onscreen keyboard.
4. To fill out another line, tap it, then enter text.
5. Tap [X], then tap Reply to [name].

## Find emails with attachments

If you're having trouble finding an attachment someone sent you, you can filter your email messages to show only those with attachments.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In a mailbox, tap  to turn on filtering.
3. Tap "Filtered by," then turn on Only Mail with Attachments.

**Tip:** You can also show emails messages with attachments from all accounts in one mailbox. To set up the attachment mailbox, tap  at the top left, tap Edit, then select Attachments. The attachments mailbox appears in the mailboxes list with your other mailboxes.

## Annotate email attachments on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can give feedback on a draft, decorate a photo, and more. You can also draw and write on a photo, video, or PDF attachment, then save it or send it back.



Draft

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap the attachment, then tap .
3. Using the drawing tools, draw with your finger.
4. When you're finished, tap [X], then choose to reply to the attachment sender, start a new message, save the annotated attachment to your files, or discard your edited attachment.

## Set email notifications on iPhone

You can change your Mail notification settings and choose which mailboxes and email threads to receive notifications from.

### Mute email notifications

To reduce interruptions from busy email threads, you can mute notifications from messages in a conversation.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a message in the conversation.
3. Tap , then tap Mute.

To specify what you want done with email messages you muted, go to Settings  > Apps > Mail > Muted Thread Action, then select an option.

### Receive notifications about replies to an email or thread

You can set up mail notifications that let you know when you receive email messages in favorite mailboxes or from your VIPs.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - When reading a message: Tap , then tap Notify Me.
  - When writing a message: Tap the Subject field, tap  in the Subject field, then tap Notify Me.

To change how notifications appear, go to Settings  > Apps > Mail > Notifications.

### Change your Mail notification settings

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail. Draft
3. Tap Notifications, then make sure that Allow Notifications is on.
4. Tap Customize Notifications, then tap the email account you want to make changes to.
5. Select the settings you want, like Alerts or Badges. When you turn on Alerts, you have the option to customize your sounds by changing the alert tone or ringtone.

You can set times when you want to allow notifications from the Mail app. See [Change notification settings](#).

## Search for email in Mail on iPhone

You can search for email messages using different criteria.

### Search for text in an email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field and type the text you're looking for.
3. Choose between searching all mailboxes or the current mailbox above the results list.
4. Tap , then tap a message in the results list to read it.

Mail searches the address fields, the subject, the email body, documents, and links. The most relevant messages appear in Top Hits above the search suggestions as you type.

**Tip:** To quickly find travel booking confirmations for flights and hotels, enter the three-letter airport code or the city name.

### Search by timeframe

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field of a mailbox list.
3. Enter a timeframe, like "September," then tap  to see all emails from that timeframe.

To narrow the search, tap the search field again, then enter a keyword, like "meeting."

### Search by email attributes

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In an inbox, tap the search field.

Before you begin typing, you may see suggested recent searches, recent documents, and links listed.

3. Enter your search criteria, then tap **Draft** one of the listed items, or do any of the following:

- *Find all flagged messages:* Enter "flag" in the search field, scroll down, then tap "Message is flagged" below Suggestions.
- *Find all unread messages:* Enter "unread" in the search field, scroll down, then tap "Message is unread" below Suggestions.
- *Find all messages with attachments:* Enter "attachment" in the search field, scroll down, then tap "Messages with attachments" below Suggestions.

## Organize email in mailboxes on iPhone

You can manage your email in mailboxes.

### Manage an email with a swipe

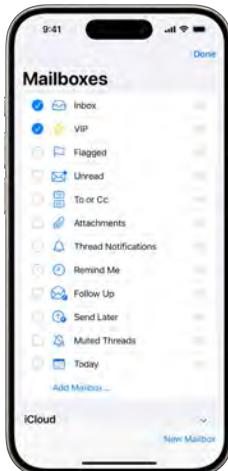
While viewing a message list, you can use a simple swipe to move individual emails to the Trash, mark them as read, and more.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In a message list, do any of the following:
  - *Reveal a list of actions:* Slowly drag a message to the left until the menu appears, then tap an item.
  - *Quickly use the rightmost action:* Swipe all the way to the left.
  - *Reveal other actions:* Swipe right.

To choose the actions you want to appear in the menus, go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Mail** > **Swipe Options** (below Message List).

### Organize your mail with mailboxes

You can choose which mailboxes to view, reorder your mailboxes, create new ones, or rename or delete mailboxes. (Some mailboxes can't be changed.)



1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. To organize your mailboxes, tap  in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.

### 3. Tap Edit, then do any of the following.

- *View mailboxes:* Select the checkboxes next to the mailboxes you want to include in the mailboxes list.
- *Reorder mailboxes:* Touch and hold  next to a mailbox until it lifts up, then drag it to the new position.
- *Create a new mailbox:* Tap New Mailbox in the lower-right corner, then follow the onscreen instructions.
- *Rename a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap the title. Delete the name, then enter a new name.
- *Delete a mailbox:* Tap the mailbox, then tap Delete Mailbox.

## Move emails to a mailbox

### 1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

### 2. Do any of the following:

- *While viewing a Primary message:* Tap , then choose a mailbox.
- *While viewing a message list:* Tap , tap Select, then select the messages you want to move by tapping their checkboxes. Tap [X] at the bottom of the message list, then choose a mailbox.

**Important:** When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

- *While viewing a sender's digest view:* Swipe left on a message, tap , tap Move Message, then choose a mailbox.

## View emails from one account at a time

If you use multiple email accounts with the Mail app, you can use the mailboxes list to view messages from one account at a time.

### 1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

### 2. Tap in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, then tap a mailbox below the email account you want to access.

Each mailbox listed below a particular email account only displays messages from that email account. For example, to view only messages sent from your iCloud account, tap iCloud, then tap Sent.

## Move emails to Junk

### 1. Go to the Mail app on your iPhone.

### 2. Do any of the following:

- *While viewing a Primary message:* Tap , then tap Move to Junk.
- *While viewing a message list:* Tap , tap Select, then select the messages you want to move by tapping their checkboxes. Tap [X] at the bottom of the message list, then tap Move to Junk.

**Important:** When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

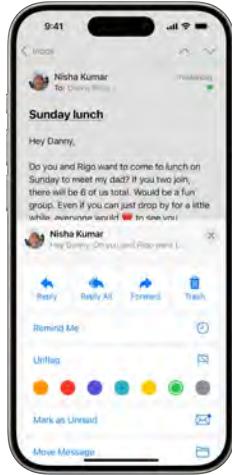
- *While viewing a sender's digest view:* Swipe left on a message, tap , then tap Move to Junk.

## Flag or block emails in Mail on iPhone

You can flag important email messages, create flagged mailboxes, and flag messages from VIPs. You can also block messages from specified senders.

### Flag an email

You can flag an important email message to make it easier to find later. A message you flag remains in your Inbox and also appears in the Flagged mailbox.



1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Flag a Primary message:* Swipe left on the Primary message, then choose Flag.
  - *Flag all Transactions, Updates, or Promotions messages from a single sender:* Swipe left on a message in the Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message list, then choose Flag.
  - *Flag a single Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message:* Tap a message to open the sender's digest view, swipe left on the message, then tap .

To change or remove a flag, open the message, tap , then select another color, or tap Unflag.

**Note:** Flags you add to a message appear on that message in Mail on all your Apple devices where you're signed in to the same [Apple Account](#).

### Create a Flagged mailbox

You can add a Flagged mailbox so all your flagged email messages are easily accessible in one location.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Edit, then select Flagged.

### Flag emails from your VIPs

Add important people to your VIP list, so their email messages appear with a VIP flag and in the VIP mailbox. See [Add someone to your contacts or make them a VIP](#).

## Block email from specified senders

You can block an email address to prevent a particular sender from emailing you in the future.

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a message from the sender you want to block.
3. Tap their email address, tap View Contact Card, then tap Block this Contact.

## Filter emails in Mail on iPhone

You can use filters to temporarily show only certain email messages—the ones that meet all the criteria you select in the filter list. For example, if you select Unread and Only Mail with Attachments, you see only unread messages that have attachments.

You can also specify which email accounts are visible in Mail when a particular Focus is on.

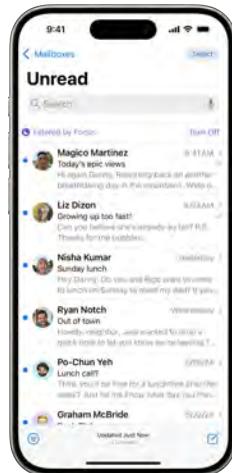
### Filter emails

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  in the bottom-left corner of a mailbox list.
3. Tap "Filtered by," then select or turn on the criteria for messages you want to view.

To turn off all filters, tap . To turn off a specific filter, tap "Filtered by," then deselect it.

### Match a mail account to a Focus

You can choose which email accounts to receive notifications from when a Focus is on. For example, you can set a filter to show only your work email account and its notifications when your Work Focus is on.



1. Go to Settings  > Focus, then tap a Focus.

If you don't see the Focus option you want, tap . See [Set up a Focus](#).

2. Tap Add Filter below Focus Filters, then tap Mail.

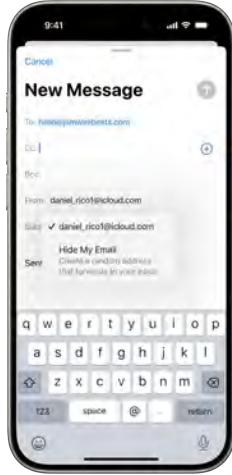
Draft

3. Select the accounts you want to see in your inbox during that Focus.

## Mail privacy and security

### Use Hide My Email in Mail on iPhone

When you subscribe to iCloud+, Hide My Email lets you send and receive email messages that forward to your real email account, to keep your real email address private. You can also generate unique email addresses on demand in the Mail app.



Send an email with Hide My Email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Add a recipient and subject for your message.

*Note:* You can only send a message using Hide My Email to one recipient at a time.

4. Tap the From field, tap it again, then tap Hide My Email. A new, unique email address appears in the From field.

**Tip:** When the recipient replies to a message you sent with Hide My Email, their reply forwards to your real email address. To set a Forward To address, see [Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings](#).

### Reply to an email using Hide My Email

When you receive an email message sent to one of your unique, random addresses, you can reply using the same address. This allows you to continue the conversation and keep your real email address private. To reply, do the following:

1. Go to the Mail app .
2. Tap the message, tap , then tap Reply.
3. Type your response.

You can tap the From field to view the email address the recipient sees.

### Manage the addresses generated by Hide My Email

You can create, deactivate, reactivate, and manage the random addresses you create with Hide My Email. See [Create and manage Hide My Email addresses in Settings](#).

## Use Mail Privacy Protection on iPhone

In the Mail app , turn on Mail Privacy Protection to make it harder for senders to learn about your Mail activity. Mail Privacy Protection hides your IP address so senders can't link it to your other online activity or determine your exact location. It also prevents senders from seeing if you've opened the email message they sent you.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Mail.
2. Tap Privacy Protection, then turn on Protect Mail Activity.

*Note:* When you subscribe to iCloud+, you can also use Hide My Email to generate unique, random email addresses that forward to your personal email account, so you don't have to share your personal email address when filling out forms on the web or signing up for newsletters. See [Use Hide My Email](#).

## Change your Mail settings on iPhone

You can adjust your preferences for the Mail app  in Settings. Customize your email signature, mark addresses outside specific domains, and more.



Customize your Mail settings

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.

3. Adjust any of the following settings<sup>Draft</sup>:

- *Accounts*: [Add or remove email accounts](#).
- *Fetch New Data*: Set a [fetch](#) schedule for your email accounts.
- *Siri*: Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Mail.
- *Search*: Allow content from Mail to appear in [Search](#).
- *Notifications*: Allow [notifications](#), choose the alert style and Lock Screen appearance, and customize notifications by account.
- *Default Mail App*: Choose the email app for new emails you draft outside of a specific app, such as emails you create using Siri.
- *Message List*: Change settings for your message list, such as showing To/Cc labels, choosing the length of email previews, and assigning swipe actions.
- *Messages*: Turn on [Privacy Protection](#), Ask Before Deleting, and Follow Up Suggestions.
- *Threading*: Turn on Organize by Thread to group emails in a conversation together in your message list. Adjust other settings for how threads appear and muting threads.
- *Composing*: Customize settings for writing emails such as including attachments with replies, showing link previews, and more.
- *Undo Send Delay*: Set a time period of up to 30 seconds to allow yourself to [unsend a message](#).

## Customize your email signature

You can customize the email signature that appears automatically at the bottom of every message you send.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Signature (below Composing).
4. Tap the text field, then edit your signature.

You can only use text in your Mail signatures.

**Tip:** If you have more than one email account, tap Per Account to set a different signature for each account.

## Mark addresses outside certain domains

When you're addressing an email message to a recipient who's not in your organization's domain, you can have the recipient's name appear in red to alert you.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mark Addresses (below Composing).

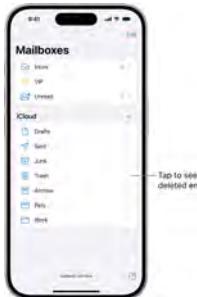
4. Enter the domains that are in your organization—ones that you don't want marked in red.

You can enter multiple domains separated by commas (for example, "apple.com, example.org").

The names of recipients in domains outside your organization appear in red, whether you send them an email or receive one from them.

## Delete and recover emails in Mail on iPhone

You can delete or archive email messages you no longer need. If you change your mind, you can recover deleted messages.



Delete emails

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - While viewing a Primary message: Tap .
  - While viewing a message list: Tap , tap Select, then select the messages you want to delete by tapping their checkboxes. Tap [X] at the bottom of the message list.

**Important:** When you select a Transactions, Updates, or Promotions message, you're selecting all the messages in that category from the sender.

- While viewing a sender's digest view: Swipe left on a message, then tap .

To turn off the deletion confirmation, go to Settings  > Apps > Mail, then turn off Ask Before Deleting (below Messages).

### Recover a deleted email

1. Go to the Mail app .
2. Tap  in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes.
3. Tap Trash, tap the message you want to recover, then tap .
4. Tap Move Message, then choose another mailbox.

**Tip:** To easily see all deleted messages, you can add a mailbox with deleted messages across all your accounts. Tap  in the upper-left corner until you see Mailboxes, tap Edit at the top right, then select the All Trash mailbox.

### Archive instead of delete

Instead of deleting email messages, you can archive them in the Archive mailbox.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail. Draft
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then do one of the following:
  - *If you’re using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.
  - *If you’re using another email account:* Tap an email account, tap Account Settings, then tap Advanced.
4. Select Archive Mailbox (below Move Discarded Messages Into).

When this option is turned on, to delete a message instead of archiving it, touch and hold , then tap Trash Message.

## Decide how long to keep deleted emails

With some email clients, you can set how long deleted messages stay in the Trash mailbox.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Mail.
3. Tap Mail Accounts, then do one of the following:
  - *If you’re using an iCloud email account:* Tap iCloud, then tap Mailbox Behaviors.
  - *If you’re using another email account:* Tap an email account, tap Account Settings, then tap Advanced.
4. Tap Remove, then select a time interval.

*Note:* Some email services might override your selection; for example, iCloud doesn’t keep deleted messages longer than 30 days, even if you select Never.

## Add a Mail widget to your iPhone Home Screen

Widgets show you current information from your favorite apps at a glance. On iPhone, you can add a Mail widget and customize which mailbox it shows on your Home Screen. Choose between displaying recent unread emails, new emails from your VIPs, or any other mailbox.

To add a Mail widget, see [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).

## Print an email or attachment in Mail on iPhone

In the Mail app, you can print a message or an attachment.

### Print an email

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.
2. In the message, tap , then tap Print.

### Print an attachment or picture

1. Go to the Mail app  on your iPhone.

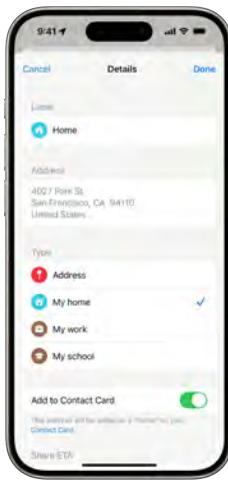
Draft

# Maps

## Get started with Maps on iPhone

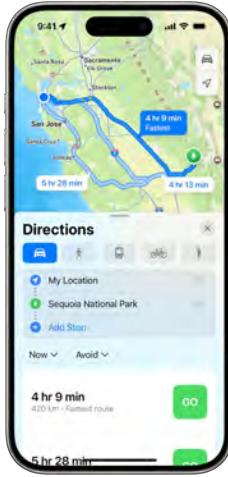
The Maps app  helps you navigate the world around you, whether you're getting directions to a new destination, discovering local businesses, or exploring unfamiliar areas with real-time traffic updates.

### Set your go-to addresses



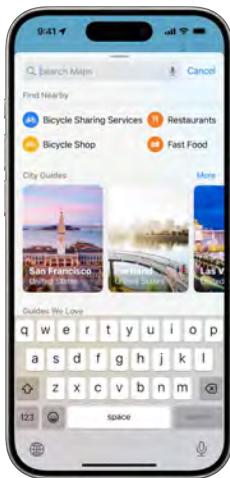
Quickly access directions by saving the locations you travel to and from most. Below Places, tap . Tap the search field, enter an address, then tap a result. Assign it to a type—home, work, or school—then tap .

### Navigate with ease



Get step-by-step directions to wherever you're headed, however you want to get there. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter a location in the search field. Tap Directions or the travel mode button (, , , or ) , then tap Go.

### Discover what's nearby



When you're in an unfamiliar area, find nearby places like restaurants, shops, or services. Tap the search field and simply start typing, or tap a category below Find Nearby, like Restaurants.

### See the world in added detail



Depending on the location, you can explore it in 360-degree panoramic views. In select cities, tap  near the bottom of a map.

Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

Want to learn more?

- [Set your home, work, or school address](#)
- [Ways to get travel directions](#)
- [Search for places](#)
- [Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services](#)
- [Explore 3D maps](#)
- [Look around places](#)

## Set your location and map view in Maps on iPhone

**Draft**  
You can find your location on a map and switch to different map views for more details. Maps provides enhanced detail for elevation, roads, trees, buildings, landmarks, and more.

**Note:** Not all features are available in all countries and regions. For more information, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



**WARNING:** For important information about navigation and avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#).

## Allow Maps to use your precise location

To find your location and provide accurate directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and Precise Location must be on.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - If Maps displays a message that Location Services is off: Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, then turn on Location Services.
  - If Maps displays a message that Precise Location is off: Tap the message, tap Turn On in Settings, tap Location, then turn on Precise Location.

Cellular data rates may apply (see [View or change cellular data settings](#)).

**Note:** To get useful location-related information in Maps, leave Significant Locations turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services. See [Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services](#).

## Show your current location

See [Search for places](#) to navigate from your current location to another.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .

Your position is marked in the middle of the map. The top of the map is north.

To show your heading instead of north at the top, tap .

To resume showing north, tap  or .

## Switch to a different map view

The Map Modes button at the lower right of a map indicates if the current map is for exploring  walking, driving  driving, riding transit  riding transit, or satellite view  satellite view. You can change the map type at any time.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the map modes button (, , , ) at the lower right.
3. Choose another map type, then tap .

You can get [driving](#), [cycling](#), [walking](#), and [transit](#) directions or [get traffic and weather info](#) in Maps.

**Note:** Apple is committed to keeping personal information about your location safe and private. Read more about Apple's commitment: go to Settings  > Apps > Maps, then tap About Apple Maps & Privacy. You can also [clear your location history](#) or [delete recent directions](#).

## Explore maps with immersive views

### View 3D maps on iPhone

While exploring any location on a map, you can rotate the map to see an area with extra dimensions.

**Note:** Not all features are available in all countries and regions. For availability, see [Detailed City Experience](#) on the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

#### Move, zoom, or rotate a map or globe

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Move around in a map:* Drag the map.
  - *Zoom in or out:* Double-tap, then drag up to zoom in or drag down to zoom out. Or pinch open or closed on the map.
  - *Rotate the map:* Touch and hold the map with two fingers, then rotate your fingers.

To show north at the top of the screen after you rotate the map, tap .

#### View a 3D map

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. To turn a 2D map into a 3D map, do one of the following:
  - Drag two fingers up.
  - On the Satellite map, tap 3D near the lower right.
  - In select cities, tap 3D near the top right. (See [Detailed City Experience](#) on the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).)

3. While looking at a 3D map, you can ~~Draft~~ do any of the following:

- *Adjust the angle:* Drag two fingers up or down.
- *See buildings and other small places in 3D:* Zoom in.
- *View the Earth:* Zoom out until the map changes to a globe. Drag the globe to rotate it, or zoom in or out to explore details for mountain ranges, deserts, oceans, and more.
- *Return to a 2D map:* Tap 2D near the lower right.



You can also [take Flyover tours](#) or [look around places](#).

## Look around places in Maps on iPhone

You can look around some places with 360-degree panoramic views.

*Note:* Not all features are available in all countries and regions. For availability, see Look Around on the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. In select cities, tap  near the bottom of a map.

3. To change the view, do any of the following:

- *Pan:* Drag a finger left or right on the scene.
- *Move forward:* Tap the scene.
- *Zoom in or out:* Pinch open or closed.
- *View another point of interest:* Switch from full-screen view, then tap elsewhere on the map, or drag the map.
- *Switch to or from full-screen view:* Tap  or .
- *Remove labels in full-screen view:* Swipe up from the place name near the bottom of the screen, then tap .

4. When finished, tap Done.

## Take Flyover tours in Maps on iPhone

You can virtually fly over many of the world's major landmarks and cities. Flyover landmarks are identified by the Flyover button on their place cards.

For a list of sites with Flyover, see the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

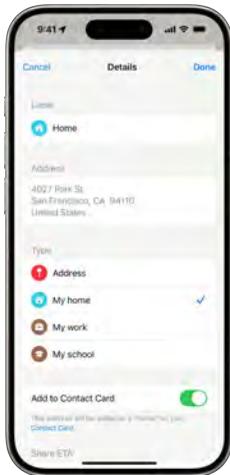


1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Search](#) for a city or the name of a landmark, then tap its name in the search results.
3. Tap Flyover.  
If Flyover doesn't appear, tap , then tap Flyover.
4. To return to the map, tap . (Tap anywhere on the screen if  doesn't appear.)

## Navigate

### Set your home, work, or school address in Maps on iPhone

You can set your home, work, or school address for one-tap access to real-time traffic updates, directions, and notifications, making your travel more efficient.



## Set your home, work, or school address

You can set a home or work address that's different from the home or work address on your contact card in the Contacts app.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, tap  (you may have to swipe left).
3. Tap the search field, then enter the address you're looking for.
4. Tap the address, then assign it to a type: My home, My work, or My school.
5. Tap .

**Note:** If you change your home, work, or school address after you're asked to sync Maps to My Card, you may need to update your address in Contacts. See [Add or edit your home address](#).

## Refine the location of an address

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to refine.
3. Tap Edit Details.
4. Tap Refine Location on the Map, then drag the map.
5. Tap .

## Change the details of a set address

You can change the details of your set addresses if those addresses change.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to change.
3. Tap Edit Details, then do any of the following:
  - *Change the name of the pin:* Enter a new name in the Label field.
  - *Assign the address to your home, work, or school:* Choose an option below Type.
  - *Change the location of the pin:* Tap Refine Location on the Map.

## Remove a set address

Draft

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, touch and hold the address you want to remove.
3. Tap Unpin.

## Use Maps on iPhone

You can get travel directions using the Maps app, the Maps widget, Siri, CarPlay, or other devices. You can also get them on your Mac before you leave.

**Important:** To get directions, iPhone must be connected to the internet, and [Precise Location must be turned on](#). Cellular data rates may apply (see [View or change cellular data settings](#)).

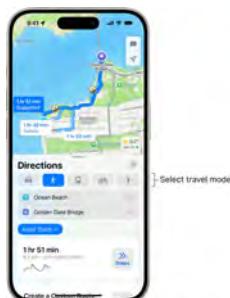


### Get directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter a location in the search field.
3. Tap Directions or the travel mode button ([driving](#) , [walking](#) , [transit](#) , [cycling](#) , or [rideshare](#) )
4. Do one of the following:
  - *If your starting point is My Location:* Tap Go for the route you want to take. As you travel along your route, Maps speaks turn-by-turn directions to your destination.
  - *If your starting point is another location:* Tap Steps for the route you want to take.

You can [add stops to your route](#).

**Tip:** If you know you'll lose your internet connection on your route, you can send yourself a [list of upcoming directions](#) or [download offline maps](#).



To get directions to a likely destination and track your ETA during navigation, add the Maps widget to your Home Screen. When you're on a Preferred Route, such as between home and work, the widget can show your current route and travel time, and may send a notification when the route is active.



See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).

## Use Siri to get directions

You can keep focused on the road by using Siri to get directions. And by listening to turn-by-turn spoken directions, you can follow driving, cycling, and walking directions without even looking at your iPhone.

[Ask Siri something like:](#)

- "Find a charging station"
- "Give me directions home"

[Learn how to use Siri](#)

**Tip:** You can ask for directions to your home, work, or school address when using Siri or searching in Maps. See [Edit a pin](#).

## Get directions using CarPlay, your Mac, or your Apple Watch

In addition to using your iPhone, you can also get directions from the following:

- *Your car:* After you connect your iPhone to CarPlay, you can use CarPlay to get driving directions, estimate your arrival time, and more. See [Get turn-by-turn directions](#).
- *Your Mac:* Before a big trip or a day of cycling, you can plan your route on your Mac, then choose File > Share > Send to [your iPhone]. See [Plan a route](#) in the Maps User Guide for Mac.
- *Your Apple Watch:* You can use Apple Watch to get driving, walking, transit, and cycling directions, which you can follow on the watch face and your iPhone. See [Get directions on Apple Watch](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

When you [sign in to your Apple Account](#), you can [hand off tasks between your iPhone and your other devices](#) to see directions elsewhere.

## Get driving directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed driving directions to your destination.

When you drive in select cities, you see enhanced details for crosswalks, bike lanes, buildings, and a street-level perspective that helps you find the right lane as you approach complex interchanges. If you often drive the same route, Maps may suggest it as My Route and alert you to delays in advance.

**Note:** Turn-by-turn spoken directions and directions for multiple stops aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Get driving directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.



You can also [ask Siri](#) something like: "Give me driving directions home." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

If you regularly drive the same route—such as between home and work—Maps may show it as My Route, making it easier to start navigation. This Preferred Route option appears based on your driving patterns, and you may alert you to delays before you even leave.

When [Driving Focus is turned on](#), or if iPhone locks automatically, Maps remains onscreen and continues to speak directions. Even if you open another app, you continue to receive turn-by-turn directions. (To return to Maps from another app, tap the directions banner at the top of the screen or the navigation indicator  in the status bar.)

## Estimate travel time for a future departure or arrival

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Now (below the destination), select a time or date for Leave at or Arrive by, then tap .

The estimated travel time may change based on predicted traffic.

## Avoid tolls or highways

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. Touch and hold anywhere on the **Draft** or enter an address in the **search** field, then tap **Directions** or .

3. Tap **Avoid** (below the destination), choose your options, then tap .

### Show or hide the compass or the speed limit

1. Go to the **Settings** app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap **Apps**, then tap **Maps**.

3. Below **Directions**, tap **Driving**, then turn **Compass** or **Speed Limit** on or off.

## Set up electric vehicle routing in Maps on iPhone

You can plan trips that include stops for charging your electric vehicle (EV) and monitor changes in your charge while driving.

**Important:** EV routing is available on select vehicles and in select areas. Features vary by country and region. Refer to your vehicle's owner guide for compatibility information.

When you [get driving directions](#), Maps can track your vehicle's charge. By analyzing elevation changes along the route and other factors, Maps identifies appropriate charging stations along the way, and, for select charging providers and countries, it provides real-time charging station availability. If you drive until your charge gets too low, you're offered a route to the nearest compatible charging station.

### Set up EV routing through CarPlay

For a compatible electric vehicle (EV) that doesn't require an app from its manufacturer, use CarPlay to set up EV routing in the Maps app.

**Note:** Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. [Connect to CarPlay](#).

2. Go to the **Maps** app  on your iPhone.

3. [Get driving directions](#).

4. Tap **Connect** (above the list of routes), then follow the onscreen instructions.

See [Intro to CarPlay](#).

### Set up EV routing using a vehicle manufacturer's app

For a compatible vehicle that requires an app from its manufacturer, use the app to set up EV routing in Maps.

**Note:** Refer to the owner's guide for your vehicle for compatibility information.

1. Go to the **App Store**  on your iPhone.

2. Search for the manufacturer of your vehicle, then download the app that supports EV routing for it. (See [Get apps in the App Store](#).)

3. Open the app, then follow its setup instructions.

4. Go to the **Maps** app , then tap your picture or initials next to the search field.

If you don't see your picture or initials, tap **Cancel** next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap **Cancel**.

5. Tap Vehicles, tap Connect Your Electric Vehicles, then follow the onscreen instructions.

You can designate a preferred charging network for your vehicle. The Maps app provides real-time charging station availability for select charging providers and countries, and you can search by plug type and network.

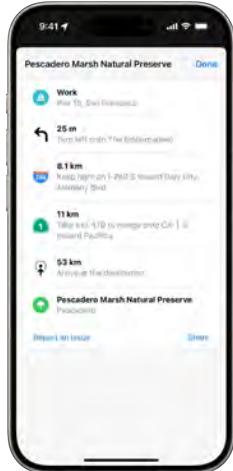
## Choose a different vehicle when you get directions

If you drive several vehicles, you can change which vehicle Maps provides routing instructions for.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Get driving directions](#).
3. Before you tap Go, scroll down in the route card.
4. Choose another electric vehicle, or if you're driving a vehicle that doesn't have an EV routing app on your iPhone, tap Different Car.

## View a route overview or a list of turns in Maps on iPhone

While following driving, cycling, transit, and walking directions, you can get an overview of your route and a list of upcoming turns.



### Get an overview of your route

You can zoom out to see your entire route onscreen, from the starting point to the destination.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Get directions](#).
3. Tap .

To return to turn-by-turn directions, tap .

### View a list of upcoming directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Get directions](#).
3. Tap anywhere on the route card except the Go button.

4. Scroll down to see more directions.<sup>Draft</sup>

5. When finished, tap **×**.



## Share a route with someone

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Get directions](#).
3. Tap anywhere on the route card except the Go button.
4. Scroll to the bottom of the card, tap Share, then choose a way to share the route.

## Change or add stops to your route in Maps on iPhone

While following driving or cycling directions, you can add places to stop along your route.

*Note:* Directions for multiple stops aren't available in all countries or regions.

### Change the starting point or destination



1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Get directions](#).
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Switch the starting point and destination:* Touch and hold  $\equiv$  for the starting location, then drag it below the destination.
  - *Choose a different starting point or destination:* Tap either the start or destination, then [use the search field](#) or a recent search result to find and select a different location.

### Create a multistop driving route

You can add up to 14 stops along your route.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. Get [driving](#) directions, then do one of the following:

- Tap Add Stop, then [search](#) for the place you want to stop.
- [Zoom in and move](#) the map, tap a place (for example, a landmark or business), then tap Add Stop in the place card.

3. To reorder the stops, touch and hold  $\equiv$  for the stop, then drag it to a new position in the list.

If you didn't tap Go yet, your selected stop appears as the final destination in your directions.

## Add a stop while following driving or cycling directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Get [driving](#) or [cycling](#) directions, then tap the route card at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap Add Stop, then tap a category (or, if driving, [search](#) for the place you want to stop).
4. Select a place to stop, then tap Add or Add Stop.

Your route is updated, and the chosen destination is the next stop.

If you're cycling and you decide not to take the detour, tap Resume Route at the top of the screen.

If you didn't tap Go yet, your selected stop appears as the final destination in your directions. Touch and hold  $\equiv$  for the stop, then drag it ahead of your final destination.

## Delete a stop from your driving directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Create a multistop driving route](#).
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Before you tap Go:* Swipe left on any stops you want to delete, then tap Delete.
  - *After you tap Go:* Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap  next to the stop.

## End directions before you arrive

Ask Siri something like: "Stop navigating." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the card at the bottom of the screen, then tap End Route.

## Get directions to your parked car in Maps on iPhone

When you disconnect your iPhone from your car's CarPlay or Bluetooth® system and exit your vehicle, a parked car marker is dropped so you can easily find the way back to your car.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose Parked Car below Siri Suggestions.

## If you don't find your parked car in Maps

Make sure your iPhone is [paired to CarPlay or Bluetooth](#) in your car, then make sure of the following settings:

- Location Services is turned on in Settings  > Privacy & Security.
- Significant Locations is turned on in Settings > Privacy & Security > Location Services > System Services.
- Show Parked Location is turned on in Settings > Apps > Maps.

*Note:* If you park your car at a familiar location, such as your home or work, Maps doesn't mark it as parked.

## Don't show your parked location

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. To remove the Parked Car marker for your car's current location, touch and hold the marker, then tap Remove Car.

To never show your parked location, go to Settings  > Apps > Maps, then turn off Show Parked Location.

## Get walking directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed walking directions to your destination. You can preview the elevation for your walk and choose a route that best avoids hills, stairs, or busy roads.

*Note:* Turn-by-turn spoken directions and immersive walking instructions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Get walking directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .

3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you Draft want to take.

If you tap Go, as you walk along your route, Maps speaks walking-specific directions for turns and maneuvers like walking up stairs.

You can also [ask Siri](#) something like: "Give me walking directions home." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

For thousands of trails in parks across the U.S., you can find out their length, preview elevation information, see photos, and more. See [Browse and save hikes](#).

## Avoid hills, busy roads, or stairs

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Avoid (below the destination), choose your options, then tap .

## Automatically see directions in augmented reality

You can view immersive walking instructions that use the iPhone camera and augmented reality to show you where to turn.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Below Directions, tap Walking, then turn on Raise to View.
4. Get walking directions, as above.
5. Raise iPhone, tap , then follow the onscreen instructions.

To return to the map, tap .

## Improve how accurately iPhone determines your location while walking

You can improve how accurately your iPhone determines your location and which way you're facing while walking. This feature uses the camera and the motion sensors ([models with Face ID](#) and iPhone SE 2nd generation and later).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Below Directions, tap Walking, then turn on Enhanced.

You can turn off this feature to decrease battery usage.

## Save walks or hikes in Maps on iPhone

You can customize a walking path to plan a hike, an exercise route, or a city tour. In U.S. national parks, you can browse hikes and filter them by length, elevation, and route type. You can also save the routes—along with any notes you add—to access when you're offline.

*Note:* Not all features are available in all countries and regions.

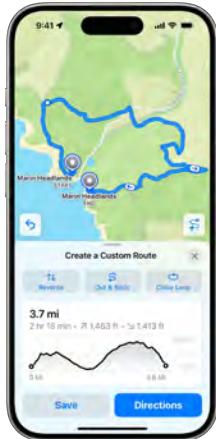
### Create your own walking or hiking route

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. To select a starting point on the map, touch and hold any road, path, trail, or other place accessible by walking to drop a pin, tap ..., then tap Create a Custom Route.

3. Tap other points along your route to choose a path, then do any of the following to complete your route:

- *Reverse route:* Tap [new icon].
- *Out & Back:* Tap [new icon].
- *Close loop:* Tap [new icon].



4. Do one of the following:

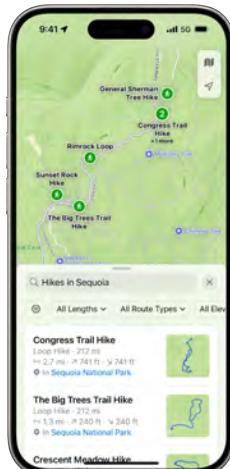
- *Navigate to the starting point:* Tap Directions (available near the start of the route).
- *Start turn-by-turn walking directions:* Tap Go (available if you're not near the route).
- *Save the route for later:* Tap Save, name the route and add notes (optional), then tap ✎.

**Tip:** Make sure Download Route is turned on if you want to access the route and the surrounding map even when you don't have access to an internet connection.

You can also remove a point by tapping a point, then tapping Remove Point, Remove Start Point, or Remove End Point.

## Browse and save hikes

You need to be online to search for hikes.



1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.<sup>Draft</sup>
2. Make sure you're in the Explore map, indicated by  at the top right of your map. See [Switch to a different map view](#).
3. Search for "hikes in [national park name]," then tap the search result.
4. To narrow down your choices, tap the filters—such as All Lengths or All Route Types. Swipe left to see more options.
5. Tap to open the hike, tap +.

You can also do one of the following instead of saving the hike to your Places:

- *If you're near the start of the route:* Tap Directions if you want to navigate to the trailhead.
- *If you're not near the route:* Tap Go to start turn-by-turn walking directions.

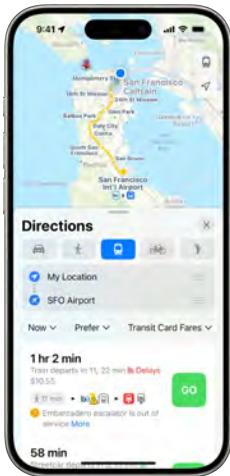


**Tip:** Make sure Download Route is turned on if you want to access the route and the surrounding map on your iPhone when you don't have access to an internet connection.

## Get transit directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed transit directions to your destination, including departure times, connection information, and fare amounts. You can also add transit cards, see low balances, and replenish your card while using Maps to get directions.

*Note:* Public transportation information and Siri transit directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Get transit directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Prefer (below the destination), then select the transit methods you want to use.
4. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.

You can also [ask Siri](#) something like: "Give me transit directions to the Ferry Building." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

When you get directions for select transit systems in Maps, you may also get a message that you can use [Apple Pay](#) to pay for transit, add a transit card, or add money to your transit card without opening the Wallet app or leaving Maps. See [Pay for transit](#), below.

## Plan for a future departure or arrival time

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Now (below the destination), select a time or date for Leave at or Arrive by, then tap .

## Show cash fares

In some countries and regions, fares are listed for the suggested routes.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Transit Card Fares (below the destination), then tap Cash Fares.

## See nearby transit departures

You can get one-tap access to the departure times for stops and stations near you.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Nearby Transit to add it to your Places.
3. Tap Transit Nearby, then tap a nearby stop to see schedules and delays (when available.)

4. Scroll down, then tap Pin Line to add it to your Places. Draft

**Tip:** Swipe right to pin a line to the top of the screen.

## See major transit lines

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. With a map showing, tap the map modes button (,,, ) at the lower right.
3. Tap Transit, then tap .

## Pay for transit with your iPhone

With many transit agencies, you can use your iPhone to pay for your fare.

- *Use Apple Pay:* With Apple Cash, credit cards, and debit cards [in the Wallet app](#) , you can [make contactless transit payments](#) with agencies that support [Apple Pay](#).
- *Use transit cards:* With participating transit systems, you can pay for your fare when you store your transit cards in Wallet. See the Apple Support article [Where you can ride transit using Apple Pay](#).
- *Use transit apps:* Many systems that don't support Wallet have apps that allow you to add a card for payment. Go to the transit agency's official website for more information or [get apps in the App Store](#).

## Get cycling directions in Maps on iPhone

You can get detailed cycling directions. Maps offers routes on bike paths, bike lanes, and bike-friendly roads (when available). You can preview the elevation for your ride, check how busy a road is, and choose a route that best avoids hills.

*Note:* Cycling directions and turn-by-turn spoken directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Get cycling directions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Go or Steps for the route you want to take.

You can also [ask Siri](#) something like: "Give cycling directions home." [Learn how to use Siri.](#)

## Avoid hills or busy roads

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Avoid (below the destination), choose your options, then tap Apply.

## Book rides in Maps on iPhone

You can request a ride with a compatible ridesharing app. If you don't have one installed, you can see which ones are available from the App Store.

*Note:* Ridesharing is available in select areas. Features vary by country and region.

### Find a ride

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold anywhere on the map or enter an address in the [search](#) field, then tap Directions or .
3. Tap Open to see the option in the ridesharing app, then book your ride in that app.

### Stop sharing your location with a ridesharing app

To estimate wait times and fares, Maps may share your location with ridesharing apps. You can stop sharing your location with ridesharing apps.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Tap Ride Booking, then turn off any app.

## Download offline maps on iPhone

You can save a map of an area and use it when your iPhone is offline.

Even when you can't access Wi-Fi or cellular service, you can view information like hours and ratings on place cards, get turn-by-turn directions for driving, walking, cycling, or riding transit, and see your estimated time of arrival.

*Note:* Offline maps aren't available in all countries or regions. Automatic Updates is on by default.



Download maps

Draft

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.  
Draft
2. Do one of the following:
  - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then tap Download.
  - Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Offline Maps, tap +, then enter a location in the search field or tap Current Location.
3. Adjust the selected area, then tap Download.

To reduce the size of the map you download, select a smaller area.

Downloaded maps update automatically, unless you [change your settings](#).

**Tip:** You can sync your iPhone with Apple Watch and carry downloaded maps with you wherever you go—even without your iPhone nearby. See [Use offline maps on Apple Watch](#) in the Apple Watch User Guide.

## Open or edit a map you downloaded

Any maps you [download to use offline](#) appear in your list of offline maps.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Tap a map, then do any of the following:
  - *Rename a map:* Tap Rename, enter a new name, then tap Save.
  - *Change the area covered by a map:* Tap Resize on the image of the map, adjust the selected area, then tap Download.
  - *Delete a map:* Tap Delete Map.

## Control map data downloads

You can change your settings—like when to download or update a map—depending on your data storage needs and preferences.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Download over cellular:* Tap Wi-Fi Only, then tap to select Wi-Fi + Cellular.
  - *Automatically update all maps:* Turn on Automatic Updates.
  - *Automatically delete unused maps:* Turn on Optimize Storage.
  - *Use online maps:* Turn off Only Use Offline Maps.

## Remove downloaded maps

You can remove downloaded maps to free up storage space on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Offline Maps.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Manually remove a map:* Swipe left on the map, then tap Delete.
  - *Automatically delete unused maps:* Turn on Optimize Storage.

# Customize your experience Draft

## Share your estimated time of arrival in Maps on iPhone

You can share your estimated time of arrival (ETA) while following driving, cycling, and walking directions to let friends and family know when you're likely to arrive. Your ETA updates automatically if there are major delays, so you don't have to send follow-up messages along the way.

*Note:* Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

### Share your estimated time of arrival (ETA)

Ask Siri something like: "Share my ETA." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. [Search for the place](#) you want to go, then tap Go.
3. Tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Share ETA.

If you don't see Share ETA, make sure you turned it on in Settings  > Apps > Maps.

4. Choose one or more suggested contacts, or tap Open Contacts to find a contact.
5. To share your ETA with more contacts, tap "Sharing with" at the bottom of the screen, then tap Open Contacts.

You can also use the Messages, Find My, and Contacts apps to share your ETA with others. See [Share your location in Messages](#), [Share your location in Find My](#), or [Edit contacts](#).

### Stop sharing your ETA

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the route card for a trip in progress.
3. Tap "Sharing with" at the bottom of the screen, then tap Stop Sharing ETA below each contact's name.

### Automatically share your ETA to a pin

When you add a contact to a pinned place in your Places, that contact automatically receives your ETA whenever you start turn-by-turn navigation to that location.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned. See [add a pin to your Places](#).
3. Tap , tap Add Person.
4. Search for a contact, tap to add them, then tap .
5. Tap the pinned location, then tap Go to start sharing your ETA.

Your location, route, and ETA are viewable until you arrive.

Draft

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Scroll down, then turn off Share ETA.

*Note:* Standard carrier data and text rates may apply.

People using iOS 13.1, iPadOS 13.1, or later receive a Maps notification with your ETA, and they can track your progress in Maps. People using earlier versions receive the notification through iMessage. People using other mobile devices receive an SMS message.

When you're near the person you're looking for and both of you have a [supported model](#), you can use Find My to get precise directions to each other's location. See [Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend](#).

## Change settings for spoken directions in Maps on iPhone

You can turn off spoken directions, adjust their volume, change their voice or language, and more.

*Note:* Turn-by-turn spoken directions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Turn spoken directions on or off

You can turn spoken directions on or off after you've started following a set of directions.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Get [driving](#), [cycling](#), or [walking](#) directions, then tap the Go button to begin following them.
3. Tap the Audio Control button on the map (for example, ), then choose an option.

Button	Description
	All directions are spoken.
	Only driving alerts are spoken.
	No directions are spoken.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is loud.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is normal.
	Voice volume for spoken directions is soft.

Draft  
Note: If you start with a location other than My Location, you see a Steps button instead of Go, and no directions are spoken. You can also change the default volume in Settings > Apps > Maps. Tap Spoken Directions, then choose an option below Voice Volume.

## Hear spoken directions in a different language or voice

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Siri (or Apple Intelligence & Siri), then change any of the following:
  - *Language*: Tap Language, then tap a language to select it as your primary Siri language.
  - *Voice*: Tap Voice, then tap to hear the different options.

## Change other settings for spoken directions

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Tap Spoken Directions, then turn on or off the following options:
  - *Directions Pause Spoken Audio*: Turn on this setting to pause spoken audio (like podcasts and audio books) when you receive spoken directions.
  - *Directions Wake Device*: Turn on this setting to wake the iPhone display when you receive spoken directions while following driving or cycling directions.
  - *Directions on Radio*: On supported cars, turn on this setting to hear spoken directions when you're listening to the radio.

To use turn-by-turn spoken directions, your iPhone must be connected to the internet, and [precise location](#) must be turned on. Cellular data rates may apply (see [View or change cellular data settings](#)).

## Choose a default travel mode and Maps units on iPhone

You can review and change your settings for the Maps app, including travel mode and units.

### Choose a default travel mode and preferences

Maps defaults to your preferred travel mode when providing directions. You can choose driving, walking, transit, or cycling.

1. Go to the Maps app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Preferences, then tap options.  
(If neither your picture nor initials appear next to the search field, tap Cancel next to the field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.)
3. To find more options, tap Maps Settings at the bottom of the screen.

Depending on the mode of travel, you may have other route options, such as choosing an arrival time when driving, avoiding heavy traffic or hills when cycling or walking, or choosing which transit method you prefer.

Draft

On a 2D map, a scale appears in the upper left as you zoom out. You can change the units used for the scale.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Language & Region.
3. Tap Measurement System, then select an option.

## Check traffic conditions and report traffic incidents in Maps on iPhone

You can view traffic conditions and report accidents, hazards, and speed checks (where allowed), and you can report when they're cleared.

Apple evaluates incoming incident reports. When there's a high level of confidence in the reports, incident markers—such as for hazards  and accidents —are displayed (or cleared) for other Maps users too.

Speed checks, where supported, aren't displayed with incident markers. Instead, notifications for speed checks appear when you [follow turn-by-turn driving directions](#).

*Note:* Not all features are available in all countries and regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Find out about traffic conditions

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. With a map showing, tap the button at the top right, choose Driving or Satellite, then tap .

Yellow indicates slowdowns, and red indicates stop-and-go traffic.

3. To view incident report, tap an incident marker.

Markers indicate incidents such as:

- Hazards 
- Road closures 
- Road construction 
- Accidents 

### Report traffic incidents

[Ask Siri](#) something like: "Report an accident." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

- When following turn-by-turn driving directions: tap , then choose an option. You can also tap the route card at the bottom of the screen, then tap Report an Incident.
- When not following directions: Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Reports. Tap Report a New Issue, tap Report an Incident, then choose an option.

If neither your picture nor initials appear, tap Cancel next to the search field, or tap the search field, then tap Cancel.

## Report on the status of a hazard or accident

When you're near the incidents in select countries or regions, you can report on their status.

[Ask Siri](#) something like "Clear the accident." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the incident marker.
3. Tap Cleared or Still Here.

You can't clear reports of speed checks.

## Get weather info in Maps on iPhone

You can find out about the weather and air quality.

*Note:* Air quality and weather aren't available in all countries or regions.

### Find out about the weather and the air quality

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Zoom in on a map until the weather icon appears in the upper-left corner; the icon shows the current conditions for that area. In some regions, the air quality index (AQI) also appears in the lower-right corner.
3. To get the hourly forecast, touch and hold the weather icon. Tap the hourly forecast to get a multiday forecast in the Weather app.

If you don't want to get air quality or weather information in Maps, go to [Settings](#)  > Apps > Maps, then turn off Air Quality Index or Weather Conditions.

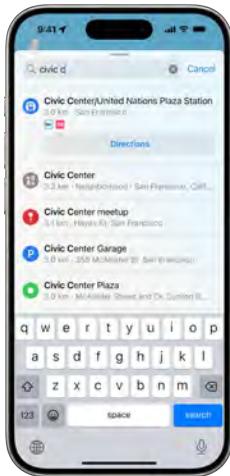
## Find places

### Search for places in Maps on iPhone

You can search for addresses, landmarks, services, and more.

#### Search for a place

Tap the search field (at the top of the card), then begin typing.



You can search in different ways. For example:

- Intersection ("8th and Market")
- Area ("Greenwich Village")
- Landmark ("Guggenheim")
- Zip code ("60622")
- Business ("movies," "restaurants San Francisco CA," "Apple Inc New York")
- Everyday language ("Any good bakeries nearby?")

If you get a list of results, scroll the list to see more. To learn about a place or get directions to it, tap a search result.

### Display, lengthen, or shorten the card

If you see a different kind of card instead of the one with the search field, tap  at the top right of the card.

To resize the card, drag the top of the card up or down.

## Find nearby attractions, restaurants, and services in Maps on iPhone

You can find nearby attractions, services, and more.

Note: Nearby suggestions aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



Find a nearby attraction, restaurant, or service

Ask Siri something like "Find coffee near me." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the [search](#) field, then do one of the following:
  - Tap a category like Grocery Stores or Restaurants below Find Nearby.
  - Enter something like "playgrounds" or "parks" in the search field, then tap the Search Nearby result.

**Tip:** You can also touch and hold the Maps app icon  on the Home Screen, then tap Search Nearby. See [Perform quick actions from Control Center, the Home Screen, and App Library](#).

Depending on what you're looking for, you may be able to apply more search criteria, tap a suggestion to get additional information, and more.

3. To change the nearby area, drag the map.

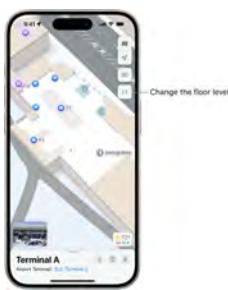
To get recommendations for where to eat, shop, and explore in great places around the world, see [Explore places with guides](#).

Images of Las Vegas, San Francisco, and Portland in City Guides courtesy of Wikipedia.

## Explore airports or malls in Maps on iPhone

For some large spaces like airports or shopping malls, you can look at detailed, interior maps to help you get around.

**Note:** Indoor maps aren't available for all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.  
Draft
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Before you get there:* Search for the airport or mall, then tap Indoor Map if it appears in the search result. Or drag the map to show it, zoom in, then tap Look Inside.
  - *When you're at the airport or mall:* Tap ↗, then tap Look Inside.
3. To find nearby services, tap a category (like Food, Restrooms, or Gates).  
To get more information about a result, tap it.
4. To get a map of a different floor, tap the button showing the floor level (zoom in if the button doesn't appear).

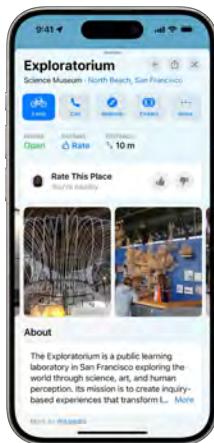
## Get information about places in Maps on iPhone

You can find street addresses and other information about places that appear.

### Get information about a place

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place (for example, a city or landmark on a map, a spot that you marked with a pin, or a search result in Maps), then do any of the following:
  - *Get a route to the location:* Tap the [directions button](#).
  - *View more information:* Scroll down in the place card.

The information might include the street address, a phone number, a webpage link, customer reviews, and more. Many restaurants and other businesses offer [App Clips](#) that allow you to order or make a reservation by tapping buttons on their place cards.



### Save information about a place

You can [save a place](#) or add it [as a pin](#) to one of your [custom guides](#), or as one of your [contacts](#).

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on a map or a search result, tap ⏮, then choose an option.

### Stop sending restaurant names to a third party

If you install an app that has a table-booking extension, it can also help you make Draft

reservations at restaurants. You can stop sending the names of restaurants that you view to the extension.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Tap Restaurant Booking, then turn off the app extension.

## View and manage Visited Places in Maps on iPhone

Visited Places helps you keep track of places you've been, so you can easily revisit or share them later. Use it to find past locations—like restaurants from a recent trip—and organize them into guides or share them with others. Visited places are end-to-end encrypted, cannot be read by Apple, and will appear on all your synced devices.

*Note:* To use Visited Places in Maps, [significant location](#) and [precise location](#) must be turned on. Not all features are available in all countries or regions.

### View a visited place

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Places.
3. Tap Visited Places, then do any of the following:
  - *Search:* Search a place by name, category, address or notes.
  - *Filter:* Search using a filter for date, category, or city.
  - *Show all visits:* Tap All Visits.

### Manage visited places

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Places.
3. Tap Visited Places.
4. Next to a place, tap More ... (on the right side of the place card), then do any of the following:
  - *Add to your Places:* Tap Add to Places.
  - *Share a visited place:* Tap Share.
  - *Add a personal note:* Tap Add a Note.
  - *Rate a place:* Tap Rate this Place.
  - *Correct a visited place:* Tap Wrong Location.
  - *Remove a visited place:* Tap Remove.

### Change how long Maps keeps your visited places

If you chose a visit retention period when setting up Visited Places, you can change it at any time in Maps. Here's how:

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Places.

3. Tap Visited Places.

4. Scroll to the bottom, tap Keep Visits, then choose a duration.

## Clear visited places history

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, then tap Places.

3. Tap Visited Places.

4. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Clear History.

## Update your Visited Places opt-in status

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.

3. Tap Location, then tap Visited Places.

# Add places and notes to your Places in Maps on iPhone

You can find pins, places, guides, and routes in one place: your Places in the Maps app. Add your own personal notes—visible only to you—to saved places, or pin your most frequently visited places for easier access.

## Save a place

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. While looking at a place card, do one of the following:

◦ Tap +. It turns to ✓.

◦ Tap ..., then tap Add to Places.

## Add notes to a place

You can read the notes you add to a place at any time, but they aren't visible to others if you share the place.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

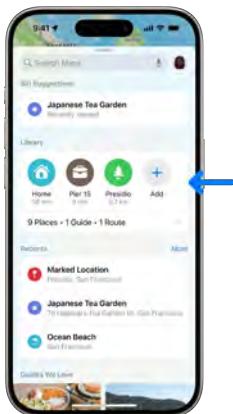
2. While looking at a place card, tap ..., then tap Add a Note.

3. Write something, then tap .

Adding a note to a place saves the place to your Places.

## Add a pin to your Places

You can pin frequently visited places for easier access in Maps and CarPlay. They appear as icons in your Places and also under Pinned.



1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Places, tap  (you may have to swipe left), then search for or tap a suggestion. You can also [drop a pin](#).
3. If the pins are for your Home, Work, or School, you can do any of the following:
  - *Assign it to a type:* Select Home, Work, or School.
  - *Sync to My Card:* Tap Add to Contact Card.
4. Tap .

See [Edit a pin](#).

## Remove a place from your Places

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places.
3. Tap , then tap Delete From Places.

If you're in the place card, tap . It returns to .

Removing a place from your Places deletes any personal [notes you added](#) to it.

## Share places in Maps on iPhone

You can share places with others. For example, you can send a message or email to show people where to meet you.

**Tip:** To share your current location when you don't have the Maps app open, just touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then tap Send My Location. See [Perform quick actions](#).

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result.
3. Tap  (at the top of the place card), then choose an option.

You can also touch and hold the place, then tap Share Location.

## Mark a location with a pin in Maps on iPhone

You can use pins to mark places so you can more easily find those locations later.



## Drop a pin

You can drop a pin to share a location with someone else, or to start or end your route at a location that isn't already marked on the map. Only one pin appears at a time, unless you save them to your Places.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears.

To refine the location, tap **Move**, then drag the map.

3. Tap **Pin**. To mark several places with pins, save each pin as you drop it.

To get directions to the pin, tap the pin, then tap the [directions button](#).

**Tip:** To note your current location when you don't have the Maps app open, touch and hold the Maps icon on the Home Screen, then choose **Mark My Location**. See [Perform quick actions](#).

## Share a pin

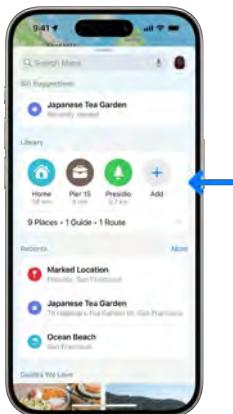
1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, then tap  (at the top of the card).
  - Tap **Places**, tap **Pinned**, swipe left on the pin, then tap **Share**.
3. Choose how you want to share it.

## Get the latitude and longitude of a pin

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Places**, tap **Pinned**, then tap the pin.
3. Swipe up to **Coordinates**.
4. Touch and hold the coordinates, then tap **Copy**.

## See your saved pins

Pins appear as a row of icons in your **Places** when you open the Maps app.



## Edit a pin

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Change the name of the pin:* Tap in the Label field.
  - *Assign it to your Home, Work, or School address:* Choose an option below Type.

**Note:** If you change your Home, Work, or School address after you're prompted to sync Maps to My Card, you may need to update your address in both Maps and Contacts. See [Add a pin to your Places](#) and [Complete or edit My Card](#).

## Remove a pin

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Places, then tap Pinned.
3. Swipe left on the pinned location, then tap Delete.

You can also tap , then tap Unpin.

## Rate places and add photos in Maps on iPhone

You can provide ratings and photos of places you visit to help other Maps users.

Your ratings and photos appear everywhere you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

**Note:** The Apple Ratings and Photos isn't available in all countries or regions.



## Rate a place

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result, then tap .

*Note:* If you don't see ratings categories or the Rate button, you can't rate the location.

3. Tap  or  for the available categories, then tap .

You can edit your ratings later if you change your mind.

## Add photos for a place

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result, then tap .
3. Tap Add Your Photos, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To upload your photos to Apple, you need to have an [Apple Account](#).

*Note:* If you don't see ratings categories or the Rate button, you can't add a photo.

4. To credit yourself for the photos you contribute, tap Photo Credit, then turn on Show Credit.

The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.

## Share your photos publicly

You can allow companies to use the photos that you add to Maps in their own products and services.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Turn on Allow Photo Providers to Use Your Photos.

Photos you share include location data, but not your identity. If you turn this setting off, photo providers may no longer use your photos. (It may take a few days to take effect.)

## Edit your photos for a place

You can add and remove photos, add or remove your photo credit, and provide a nickname for your photo credit.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.  
Draft
2. Tap Places.
3. Tap the place whose photos you want to edit, then tap Your Photos
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Submit another photo:* Tap Add Photo.
  - *Remove a photo:* Tap , then tap Delete Your Photo.
  - *Change your photo credit:* Tap , then tap Change Photo Credit. The photo credit option you choose applies to all photos you previously submitted and continue to submit.

## Stop getting ratings and photos suggestions

You may receive suggestions in Maps to submit a rating or photo if you recently visited or took a photo of a point of interest. These suggestions use on-device processing and can't be read by Apple. If you don't want to receive these suggestions, you can turn them off.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Maps.
3. Turn off Show Ratings and Photos Suggestions.

## Explore places with guides in Maps on iPhone

Guides are available to help you discover great places around the world to eat, shop, and explore. Guides are automatically updated when new places are added, so you always have the latest recommendations.

*Note:* Guides aren't available in all countries or regions.

### Explore the world with guides

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down, then tap Guides We Love.
3. Browse by any of the following:
  - *City:* Tap  near the top of the screen, then tap a city. You can also scroll down to the Cities category.
  - *Interest:* Tap an interest, then tap to browse guides in that group.
  - *Publisher:* Scroll down to the Browse by Publisher category, then tap a Publisher.

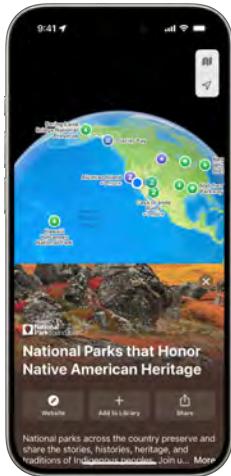
### View, share, and save a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

2. To open a guide, tap its cover. To **Draft** view its contents, scroll down.

You can also do the following:

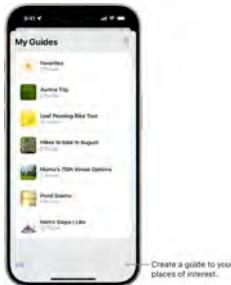
- *Save the guide:* Tap Add to Guides.
- *Share the guide:* Tap Share , then choose an option.
- *See saved guides:* Tap Places, then tap Guides. See [organize places with custom guides](#).
- *Close the guide:* Tap .



**Tip:** Look for [App Clips](#) buttons. These allow you to do things like reserve a table directly from a guide.

## Organize places with custom guides in Maps on iPhone

You can organize places into your own guides for easy reference, and you can share your guides with others.



### See your favorites

A guide called Favorites always appears in your guides. This makes it easier for you to save places to a guide.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Your Guides, tap Favorites.

**Tip:** You can pin any places that you want to see in your Places when you open Maps. See [Add a pin to your Places](#).

### Create a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.

**Draft**

2. Tap Your Guides, then tap [new icon].  
Draft
3. Enter a name for the guide, then tap  to add an image from your photo library (optional).
4. Tap .

## Add a place to a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a place on the map or a search result.
3. In the place card, tap , then tap Add to Guides.
4. Choose one of your guides, then tap .

You can also add Publisher Guides to your guides. See [Explore places with guides](#).

## Share a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Your Guides, tap the guide you want to share.
3. Tap , then choose an option.

## Edit a guide that you created

For any guide that you create, you can supply a cover image, change the title, and remove places.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Your Guides, tap the guide you want to edit.
3. Tap , make your changes, then tap .

## Remove a guide

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Below Your Guides, tap  on the guide you want to remove, then tap Delete.

# Clear your location history in Maps on iPhone

The Maps app  uses information about your significant locations from [Location Services](#) to provide you with personalized services like predictive traffic routing. Your significant locations are end-to-end encrypted and can't be read by Apple. You can delete your significant locations at any time—for example, to reset predictive traffic routing and similar personalized services.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Privacy & Security, then tap Location Services.
3. Tap System Services, then tap Significant Locations.
4. Tap Clear History.

This action clears all your significant locations everywhere you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

# Delete recent directions in Maps on iPhone Draft

You can delete directions that you recently viewed.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Scroll down in the card to Recents, then do one of the following:
  - *Delete a single item:* Tap , then tap Clear.
  - *Delete all recent:* Tap Recents, then tap Clear.

## Report an issue with Maps on iPhone

If you notice something's missing in Maps—an address, business, transit stop, or another feature—you can add it. You can also report other kinds of issues, such as an incorrect step in directions or a business that has closed.

1. Go to the Maps app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Touch and hold the map until a pin marker appears, scroll to the bottom of the card, then tap Report Something Missing.
  - Tap your picture or initials next to the search field, tap Reports, then tap Report a New Issue.
3. Choose an option, then follow the onscreen instructions.

To change the address used for your home or work, see [Add notes to a place](#).

If you have a business (large or small), you can use [Apple Business Connect](#) to help your customers find it in Maps, Apple Wallet, Siri, and more. Learn more about [Apple Business Connect](#).

## Measure

### Measure dimensions with iPhone

You can use your iPhone camera to measure nearby objects—automatically detect the dimensions of rectangular objects or manually set the start and end points of a measurement.



Draft

Draft  
For best results, use Measure on well-defined objects located 0.5 to 3 meters (2 to 10 feet) from iPhone. (Measurements are approximate.)

**Note:** You can use Measure on external displays without turning on Screen Mirroring in Control Center.

## Start a measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. Position iPhone so that the object you want to measure appears on the screen.

**Note:** For your privacy, when you use Measure to take measurements, a green dot appears at the top of the screen to indicate your camera is in use.

## Take an automatic rectangle measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Use the iPhone camera to slowly scan nearby objects.
3. When iPhone detects the edges of a rectangular object, a white box frames the object; tap the white box or  to see the dimensions.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

## Take a manual measurement

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Align the dot at the center of the screen with the point where you want to start measuring, then tap .
3. Slowly pan iPhone to the end point, then tap  to see the measured length.
4. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .
5. Take another measurement, or tap Clear to start over.

## Use edge guides

On [supported models](#), you can easily measure the height and straight edges of furniture, countertops, and other objects using guide lines that appear automatically.

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Position the dot at the center of the screen along the straight edge of an object until a guide line appears.
3. Tap  where you want to begin measuring.
4. Slowly pan along the guide line, then tap  at the endpoint to see the measured length.
5. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

## Use Ruler view

On [supported models](#), you can see more detail in your measurements with Ruler view.

1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.

Draft

2. After measuring the distance between two points, move iPhone closer to the measurement line until it transforms into a ruler, showing incremental units of length.
3. To take a photo of your measurement, tap .

## View and save measurements on iPhone

On [supported models](#), you can save a list of all the measurements you take in a single session, complete with screenshots, so you can easily share and access them whenever you need them.

1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap  to see a list of your recent measurements.

Swipe up from the top of the list to see more measurements.
3. To save the measurements, tap Copy, open another app (for example, Notes), tap in a document, then tap Paste.

*Note:* Height measurements aren't included in this list. To save a person's height measurement, see [Measure a person's height](#).

## Measure a person's height with iPhone

On [supported models](#), you can instantly measure a person's height from the floor to the top of their head, hair, or hat. (You can even measure a person's seated height.)



1. Go to the Measure app  (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Position iPhone so that the person you want to measure appears on the screen from head to toe.

After a moment, a line appears at the top of the person's head (or hair, or hat), with the height measurement showing just below the line.

3. To take a photo of the measurement, tap .
4. To save the photo, tap the screenshot in the lower-left corner, tap Done, then choose Save to Photos or Save to Files.

You can easily access and share the height measurement image from Photos or Files on iPhone whenever you want.

To take the measurement again, turn iPhone away for a moment to reset the height. Draft

## Use iPhone as a level

Use your iPhone to determine whether an object near you is level (parallel to the ground), or how many degrees it varies from level (measurements are approximate).



1. Go to the Measure app (in the Utilities folder) on your iPhone.
2. Tap Level, then hold iPhone against an object, such as a picture frame.
  - *Make an object level:* Rotate the object and iPhone until you see green.
  - *Match the slope:* Tap the screen to capture the slope of the first object. Hold iPhone against another object and rotate both of them until the screen turns green.

To reset the level, tap the screen again.

## Messages

### Get started with Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app, you can exchange texts, photos, videos, and more, with individuals, businesses, and groups. You can express yourself with backgrounds and animations, share TV shows and music, and use Messages to collaborate with others.

#### Turn on iMessage



When you and a friend both sign in to iMessage, you can send each other unlimited messages, no matter where you are in the world. Go to Settings  > Apps > Messages, then turn on iMessage.

## Sync your messages



You can see the same messages you get on your iPhone on your other Apple devices. On your iPhone, go to Settings  > Apps > Messages, tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on your other devices in the list. Be sure to sign in to the same Apple Account on the other devices, too.

## Chat as a group



You can chat with several people at once—like your family or a work group. Tap , enter the names of the people in the group, then type your message, or tap  to dictate it. To name the group, tap the group icons at the top of the conversation, tap Edit, then tap Edit Name and Photo.

## Go beyond texting



**FPO**

You don't have to limit your communication to text. To add emoji, tap ⓘ or ⓘ on your keyboard. To add media, polls, location sharing, and more, tap ⓘ next to the text field.

### Schedule a message to deliver later



**FPO**

If it's too late at night or too important to forget, schedule your message for a future time, instead of sending it as soon as you finish it. Tap ⓘ, tap Send Later, choose a time, then tap ⓘ.

Want to learn more?

- [Set up Messages](#)
- [Send and reply to messages](#)
- [Group conversations](#)
- [Use iMessage apps](#)
- [Schedule a text message to send later](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Screen, block, filter, and report messages](#)
- [Stop, mute, and change notifications](#)

Availability of Messages features may depend on your carrier, country, or region.

## Set up Messages on iPhone

Draft  
You can send text messages several different ways in the Messages app: 

- Over Wi-Fi or cellular service, using [iMessage](#) with others who also use iMessage. Your iMessage texts appear in blue bubbles.
- Over cellular service with SMS, MMS, or RCS messages, which appear in green bubbles. See [Set up cellular service](#). (RCS messages aren't supported by all carriers or in all countries or regions.)
- Over satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, using iMessage or SMS on supported iPhone models and certain carriers (U.S., Canada, and Mexico only). See [Send a text message via satellite](#).

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?](#), the [Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone in the United States and Canada website](#), and the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Turn on iMessage

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on iMessage.
4. To select which of your phone numbers and email addresses you want to use with iMessage, go to Settings , tap Apps, then tap Messages. Tap Send & Receive, then choose from the available options below "You can receive iMessages to and reply from."

[Learn more about iMessage](#).

If you're having problems, see the Apple Support article [If you can't turn on or sign in to iMessage or FaceTime on your iPhone](#).

## Sync messages on all your Apple devices

When you turn on Messages in iCloud, messages you send and receive on your iPhone are saved in iCloud. When you [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) and turn on Messages in iCloud on another device, your conversations show up and sync there too. Your entire messages history is kept up to date across those devices, even when you set up a new device. This includes messages sent or received with SMS, MMS, RCS, or iMessage.

1. Make sure that your iPhone is turned on and connected to a Wi-Fi or cellular network, and that you [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) on each device.
2. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
3. Tap your name, tap iCloud, then tap Messages.  
If Messages doesn't appear, tap See All in the Saved to iCloud section.
4. Turn on "Use on this iPhone" (if it's not already turned on).
5. To confirm which devices receive any SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages you get on your iPhone, go to Settings, tap Apps, then tap Messages. Tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on your other devices.

After you turn on Messages in iCloud, any messages or attachments you delete from iPhone are also deleted from your other Apple devices (iOS 11.4, iPadOS 13, macOS 10.13.5, watchOS 1, visionOS 1, or later) where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See [Set up iCloud for Messages on all your devices](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

Note: Messages in iCloud uses iCloud storage. See [Use iCloud](#).

Draft

## Choose other devices for SMS, MMS, or RCS messaging Draft

Text Message Forwarding is built into [Messages in iCloud](#). If you don't want to [sync messages on all your Apple devices](#), you can set up your iPhone so that when you send or receive an SMS, MMS, or RCS message, it appears on your other Apple devices.

*Note:* Availability varies by region and carrier.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Text Message Forwarding, then turn on any devices you want to include.

If any devices aren't appearing in the list, see the Apple Support article [Forward text messages from your iPhone to other devices](#).

*Note:* If you're not using [two-factor authentication](#), you need to enter a six-digit activation code that appears on the other device.

## Share your name and photo

In Messages, you can share your name and photo with others. You decide whether to share it whenever you send or receive a message from someone new.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. At the top of the conversation list, tap Edit.
3. Tap Set Up Name & Photo, then follow the onscreen instructions to choose an icon to represent you.
4. Scroll down to Name and Photo Sharing, then turn it on.
5. Tap Share Automatically, then choose how you'd like to share your name and photo with saved contacts.
6. Tap  to save your changes.

To change these settings after you set them up, tap Edit, then tap Name & Photo.

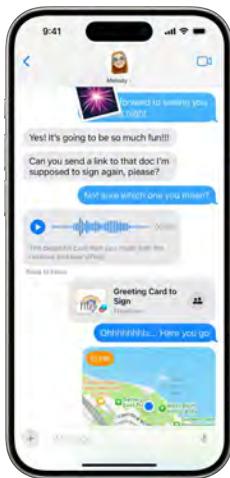
*Note:* Your name and photo may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

## About iMessage

iMessage is a secure messaging service that you can use to send and receive text messages in the Messages app  on your iPhone, iPad, Mac, Apple Watch, and Apple Vision Pro.

If someone sends a message to your email address or phone number using iMessage, you receive the message [on all your Apple devices](#) that are set up to receive messages sent to that email address or phone number. When you view an iMessage conversation, you see all messages sent from any device, so you can keep in touch with others wherever you are.

You need an [Apple Account](#) to use some iMessage features. If you've made purchases from the iTunes Store or App Store or you've signed in to iCloud, you have an Apple Account.



Some things to know about communicating in iMessage:

- You can send texts over Wi-Fi or cellular service.
- Texts you send and receive using iMessage don't count against your SMS, MMS, or RCS allowances in your cellular messaging plan, but cellular data rates may apply.
- When you communicate with others who also use iMessage on an Apple device, the texts appear in blue bubbles. (SMS, MMS, and RCS messages appear in green bubbles.)

Messages are sent with iMessage when you see a blue  send button. A green send button indicates the message is sent with SMS, MMS, RCS, or your cellular service.

- In a conversation, you can see if someone's writing a message. If someone has [read receipts](#) turned on, you can also see if they've opened your message.
- You can use a wider range of apps and features, like [styles](#), [inline replies](#), [editing](#), [unsending](#), [scheduling](#), [backgrounds](#), [polls](#), [Memoji](#), [drawings](#), [collaboration](#), [group conversation management](#), and more.
- A greater range of options are available when you [react with Tapbacks](#), [send audio messages](#), or [send via satellite](#).
- When you use iMessage, you can [report spam or junk messages](#) to Apple and [screen unknown senders](#).
- For security, messages sent using iMessage are end-to-end encrypted before they're sent, and you can also use [Contact Key Verification](#).

## Send and reply to messages on iPhone

You can send text messages, images, and much more. You can reply within a conversation or to specific comments in a thread. You can even use Siri to listen and respond to your messages.

To fully use all the features in the Messages app, make sure you [set up Messages](#).

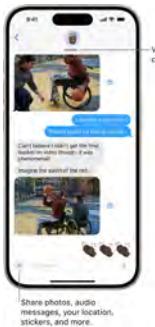
Ask Siri something like: "Read my last message from Antonio." [Learn how to use Siri](#).



Draft

## Start a conversation

You can send a text message to one or more people to start a new conversation.



1. Go to the [Messages app](#) on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap  at the bottom right of the screen.
3. Tap the [To](#) field, then enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient.

To choose recipients from your [contacts](#), tap  in the [To](#) field.

4. Do any of the following:
  - Tap the text field above the keyboard, then type your message. (Tap  or  to add [emoji](#).)
  - Tap  to [dictate text](#) in the language of your [keyboard](#).
  - Tap  (to the left of the text field) to send [photos](#), [videos](#), [stickers](#), [polls](#), [audio messages](#), [your location](#), and more with [iMessage apps](#).
5. Tap .

If a message can't be sent, an alert appears. Tap  to try sending the message again.

To return to the conversation list from a conversation, tap .

If you're having problems, see the Apple Support article [If you can't send or receive messages on your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Reply to a message

Messages are grouped by conversation in the conversation list. A dot indicates you haven't yet read one or more messages in that conversation.

1. Go to the [Messages app](#) on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Tap the text field, create your message, then tap  to send your message.

**Tip:** Find out when a message was sent to you. Drag the message bubble to the left to see timestamps for all messages in the conversation.

Draft

## Reply inline to a specific message Draft

You can respond to a specific message inline. An inline reply quotes the message you're responding to. This keeps a busy conversation organized by clarifying which response relates to which message.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap the conversation that you want to participate in.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Swipe right on the message bubble that you want to reply to.
  - Touch and hold the message bubble that you want to reply to, then tap Reply.
4. Enter your message, then tap .

**Note:** Everyone in a [group conversation](#) can see your inline reply. To reply privately, [start a conversation](#) in a new thread. Tap the name of your group at the top of the conversation, touch and hold the icon of the person you want to message privately, then tap Message.

5. To return to the main conversation, tap the blurred background.

Touch and hold a message to react with a [Tapback](#), such as a thumbs-up or a heart.

**Tip:** To copy part of a message, touch and hold the message, tap Select, select the text you want to copy, then tap Copy.

## Reply to messages from your Lock Screen

You can reply to messages on your Lock Screen without opening Messages. See [Turn on Lock Screen features](#).

## Send a text message from your other number

If your iPhone is set up with [Dual SIM](#), you can tap your number to switch to your other outgoing line as you compose your message.

## Why are some bubbles blue and others green?

If a message can be sent using [iMessage](#), you see a blue Send arrow , and the message appears in a blue bubble.

If you can't use iMessage (which happens, for example, when a recipient isn't using an Apple device), you can use SMS, MMS, or RCS. Messages sent with SMS, MMS, or RCS appear in green bubbles.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is the difference between iMessage, RCS, and SMS/MMS?](#)



Note: Content may not appear as expected when you send messages to recipients who are using non-Apple devices.

## Send a text message via satellite on iPhone

On iPhone 14 models or later, you can text friends and family via satellite when you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage. (Available in the U.S. and Canada with iOS 18 or later and in Mexico with iOS 18.4 or later.)

**Important:** To connect with emergency services, use [Emergency SOS via satellite](#).



### Before you begin

To set up your iPhone to use either iMessage or SMS via satellite, do the following *before* you're outside of cellular or Wi-Fi coverage:

- Turn on [iMessage](#).
- Check that your SIM is active.
- If you want someone to be able to *initiate* an SMS conversation via satellite, add them to your [Family Sharing group](#) or emergency contacts (see [Set up and view your Medical ID](#)). Anyone else must *first* get an SMS message from you (via satellite) before they can reply.

### Send and receive messages via satellite

When you try to send a text message but you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, you get an alert to connect to your nearest satellite. You can then exchange texts, Tapbacks, and emoji over iMessage and SMS.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. If you see an alert that you're outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, tap **Use Messages via Satellite**.
3. Follow the instructions to connect to a satellite, while remaining aware of your surroundings. You don't need to raise your phone—just hold it as you normally would, and make sure that you're outside with a clear view of the sky and the horizon. If you're under heavy foliage or surrounded by other obstructions, you might not be able to connect to a satellite.

Other satellite-enabled services also become available, including [Emergency SOS via satellite](#), [Roadside Assistance](#), and [Find My](#).

4. Enter your message, then tap . (The Send button is green instead of blue when sending with SMS.)

It may take a few minutes to send your message via satellite.

When you connect, a green dot and  appear at the top of your screen. If your connection weakens, the green dot turns orange, and  and  tell you where to find the signal.

If you have cellular or Wi-Fi coverage and use iMessage via satellite to communicate with someone who doesn't have either, an alert tells you if your contact is accepting messages via satellite. Tap , then tap **Send via Satellite** (below the message bubble) to send your message.

## How messages via satellite works

When possible, iPhone uses [iMessage](#) to send or receive texts via satellite to people in your contact list.

When iMessage isn't available, iPhone uses SMS messaging via satellite to reach any mobile phone number. This may happen if any of the following is true of the person you're texting:

- They don't have iMessage.
- They're not in your contacts.
- They haven't updated their device to iOS 18, iPadOS 18, macOS 15, watchOS 11, visionOS 2, or later.
- You haven't been in contact with them over iMessage recently (in the last month or so).

While using iMessage outside of cellular and Wi-Fi coverage, anyone you communicate with who's in your contacts and has a cellular or Wi-Fi connection sees a status letting them know that you're receiving messages via satellite if they recently [updated their iOS](#).

Messages via satellite is free for 2 years after activation.

To preview how the feature works

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap **Satellite Connection Demo**.

**Note:** Not all carriers support SMS messaging via satellite, and some features may vary. Third parties and affiliates provide the network for satellite connection features.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Messages via satellite](#).

Draft

# Schedule a text message on iPhone to send later

If it's too late at night or too important to forget, you can schedule a text message to be sent at a later time.

**Note:** You must be using [iMessage](#). Your recipient can use any device, and they won't know that the message was scheduled. You need to be online to reschedule, edit, or delete a scheduled message.



## Schedule a message

You can schedule a message up to 14 days into the future.

1. Go to the [Messages app](#) on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to schedule a message or [start a conversation](#).
3. Tap , then tap [Send Later](#).
4. Tap the time to open the scheduler, then choose when you want to send your message.

The border of the text field turns into a dashed line, and the time your message will be sent appears above the message.

5. Enter a message, then tap .

The message appears with a dashed line until it's time to send it, and it's delivered even if all your devices are offline.

**Note:** Scheduled messages are encrypted and stored on Apple servers only until they're sent. When a message is sent, it's removed from Apple servers, the balloon becomes a solid color, and its dashed line disappears.

## Change the time to send a message

You can reschedule a message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the [Messages app](#) on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with the message you want to reschedule.

If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.

3. Tap Edit beside the date (above your <sup>Draft</sup> scheduled message), then do any of the following:

- *Reschedule it:* Tap Edit Time, choose a new time, then tap away from the schedule to commit the new time.
- *Send it immediately:* Tap Send Message.

## Edit a scheduled message

You can edit a scheduled message until its delivery time.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to edit.

If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.

3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
4. Make any changes, then tap  to resend with edits or  to revert.

## Delete a scheduled message

When you delete a message before its scheduled time, it's canceled and not delivered to the recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with the scheduled message you want to delete.

If you don't see your message, scroll down to the bottom of the conversation. Scheduled messages may appear below sent messages.

3. Touch and hold the message you want to cancel, then tap Delete.

# Unsend and edit messages on iPhone

You can unsend and edit recent text messages, giving you the opportunity to fix a typo or pull back a message that you accidentally sent to the wrong person.



**Note:** To unsend or edit text messages, you must be using iMessage with iOS 16, iPadOS 16.1, macOS 13, visionOS 1, or later. If you unsend a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, the original message remains in the conversation, and you're notified that the recipient may still see the original message. If you edit a message to someone who's using an earlier operating system, they receive follow-up messages with the preface "Edited to" and your new message in quotation marks. SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can't be edited or unsent. However, SMS, MMS, or RCS text messages can be edited in a group conversation as long as there's at least one other iMessage user in the group.

## Unsend a message

You can undo a recently sent message for up to 2 minutes after sending it.

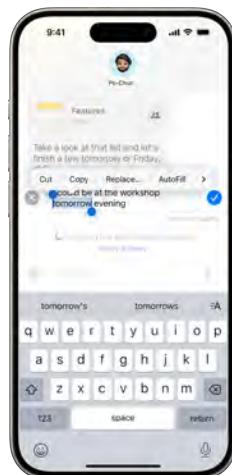
1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Undo Send.

A note confirming that you unsent the message appears in both conversation transcripts: yours and your recipient's.

Unsending removes the message from your recipient's device.

## Edit a sent message

You can edit a recently sent message up to five times within 15 minutes of sending it.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Select a conversation with the message you want to edit.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble, then tap Edit.
4. Make any changes, then tap  to resend with edits or  to revert.

**Note:** The message is marked as Edited in the conversation transcript.

The message bubble updates to reflect your edits on both your iPhone and your recipient's device, and both of you can tap Edited to see previous versions of your message.

## Keep track of messages on iPhone

You can catch up on text messages you missed, mark messages as unread, and pin and unpin conversations to prioritize messages in the conversation list.

## Catch up on messages you missed<sup>Draft</sup>

If you receive messages while you have notifications paused or you're away from your iPhone, you can jump to the first message you haven't seen in a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open an unread conversation, then tap .

Your view of the conversation moves up to the first unread message.

## Mark messages as unread

When you don't have time to respond, you can mark conversations as unread so you can return to them later.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:
  - Swipe right on a conversation to mark it as unread.
  - Drag right and tap .

**Tip:** You can also mark several messages as unread at the same time. Tap Edit, tap Select Messages, select the conversations you want to mark as unread, then tap Unread in the bottom-left corner.

## See a list of your unread messages

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap , then tap Unread.

A checkmark appears next to Unread, and the icon turns blue  to indicate that filtering is on.
3. To see both your read and unread messages again, tap , then tap to deselect Unread.

**Tip:** To mark all your unread messages as read, tap Edit, tap Select Messages, then tap Read All.

## Pin a conversation

You can pin specific conversations to the top of the conversation list so the people you contact most always come first in the list. Pinned conversations appear as larger icons at the top of your conversation list.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Touch and hold a conversation, then **tap Pin**.

## Pin shared items

You can pin certain shared items—such as links or collaboration invitations—within a conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message, then tap Pin.
3. To find pinned items, tap the name of your contact or group at the top of the conversation, then tap a category (such as Links). Pinned items appear at the top.

## Unpin a conversation

You can unpin specific conversations so that they don't appear at the top of the conversation list.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a pinned conversation, then do one of the following:
  - Drag the message to the bottom of the list, and let go.
  - Tap Unpin.

# Search in Messages on iPhone

You can search for text messages and attachments, using different criteria to narrow your results.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field below the conversation list.

3. Enter what you're looking for (such as a word or phrase).  
Draft



4. To filter your search, do any of the following:

- *Limit your search to one person or conversation:* Start by typing a person's name, tap "Messages with" or "Messages in," then tap other criteria that appear or add any text you want to find in your conversation.
- *Limit your search to types of shared items:* Begin your search with a search term—such as Photo, Link, Wallet (for passes). When a filter appears near the top of the screen, tap it to add it to filter the search.
- *Combine search criteria:* Add another search term or filter.

5. Tap , then tap a message in the results list to read it.

The search field also opens suggestions—such as conversations, photos, locations, links, and more. Tap any suggestion to quickly jump to a conversation.

## Forward and share messages on iPhone

You can forward one or more text messages in a conversation to a different recipient.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold a message bubble you want to forward, then tap More.
3. Tap to select one or more messages to forward, then tap .
4. Enter recipients, then tap .

**Tip:** To show the message bubbles and timestamps just as they appear in a conversation, send a [screenshot](#) as an attached image instead of forwarding messages.

To see the same messages on other devices you use, see [Sync messages on all your Apple devices](#).

## Have a group conversation in Messages on iPhone

You can send a group text message, name it, and assign it an image to find it more easily. In a group conversation, you can call people's attention to specific messages and even [collaborate on projects](#).  
Draft



Draft

## Start a group conversation

You can send a message to multiple people to start a group conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, tap  at the bottom right of the screen.
3. Tap the To field, then enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient.

To choose group members from your [contacts](#), tap  in the To field.

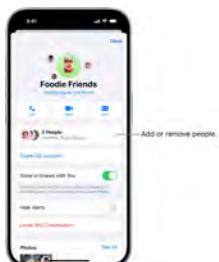
*Note:* If one or more of your recipients isn't using [iMessage](#), messages appear in green bubbles instead of blue ones.

4. Tap the text field, enter a message or tap  (to the left of the text field) to send a [photo](#), [video](#), [poll](#), or another item with [iMessage apps](#).
5. Tap .

## Add someone to an existing group conversation

If you have at least two other people in a group conversation, you can add additional contacts.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to add someone to.
3. Tap the group icon or name at the top of the conversation, then tap Add.



4. Enter the phone number, contact name, or [Apple Account](#) of each recipient.

To add group members from your [contacts](#), tap  in the To field.

5. Tap  to save your changes.

*Note:* If the group includes someone who hasn't [turned on iMessage](#), follow the onscreen instructions to start a new group.

Draft

If you only have one other person in the Draft conversation, you need to start a new group conversation to add someone else.

To remove someone from a group conversation in iMessage, touch and hold their icon, then tap Remove from Group.

In iOS 26 or later, you can add new contacts introduced in group conversations. See [Create a contact](#).

## Leave a group conversation

You can leave a group chat if there are at least three other participants in the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the group conversation you want to leave.
3. Tap the group icon or name at the top of the conversation.
4. Scroll down and tap Leave This Conversation or Delete and Block This Conversation. (Learn more about [deleting](#) and [blocking](#) conversations.)  
Blocked conversations are moved to the Recently Deleted folder, where you can [recover](#) them.

If you want to stay in a group chat but stop receiving its notifications, [mute the conversation](#) instead.

## Mention people in a group conversation

You can mention someone by name in a group conversation to call their attention to a specific message, and they'll get a notification. Depending on their settings, the person you mention may be notified even if they have the conversation muted.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, begin typing a contact's name in the text field.
3. Tap the contact's name when it appears.

You can also mention a contact in Messages by typing @ followed by the contact's name.

To change whether you get notifications when your name is mentioned in Messages, go to Settings  > Apps > Messages, then turn on or off Notify Me.

## Name a group conversation

You can name a group chat and choose an icon to represent the conversation. Everyone who has [turned on iMessage](#) sees the new name and icon.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Edit, tap Edit Name & Photo, then choose an option.

## Send or request money

In group [iMessage](#) conversations in iOS 26 or later, you can send money to someone in a group chat or make a request of the group to split bills, organize gifts, or pay someone back, then track payments in the Wallet app. See [Send, request, and receive payments with Apple Cash in Messages](#).

# Share screens using <sup>Draft</sup>Messages on iPhone

While using Messages on an iPhone that meets [minimum system requirements](#), you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to get together with friends while you watch the latest episode of your favorite show or listen to a new song in real time.

## Show someone else what's on your screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to share your screen to bring apps, webpages, and more into the conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Share My Screen. See [Share your screen](#).

## See another person's screen

You can jump from Messages to FaceTime to see another person's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with just one other person, tap .
3. Tap Ask to Share Screen. See [Request remote control](#).

## Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

You can start a Messages conversation right from a supported app like Apple TV and Music.

To use SharePlay in Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#). Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. In a supported app, find a show, movie, song, album, or other content you want to share, then tap the item to see its details.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap , then tap SharePlay.
  - Tap  at the top right, tap , then tap SharePlay.
  - Tap  next to the content, then tap SharePlay.
3. In the To field, enter the contacts you want to share with, then tap Messages.
4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

To begin viewing or listening, recipients tap the content's title at the top of the conversation, then tap Open. For everyone who has access to the content, the video starts playing at the same time.

*Note:* If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

When you select content to share and tap the Play button, you can also select Play for Everyone (if it appears) to begin it for everyone in the conversation. (Others on the thread may have to tap Join SharePlay to see the video.)

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

Use Messages when you want no interruptions to the sound of the movie, show, song, or podcast, or tap  to switch to **FaceTime** when you want to see and hear other people as you chat.

**Tip:** After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

## Collaborate on projects with Messages on iPhone

In the Messages app , you can send a text message to invite people to collaborate on a project, and everyone in the conversation is added to the document, spreadsheet, or other shared file.

**Note:** To start collaborating on a project with Messages, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#) with iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, watchOS 9, visionOS 1, or later, and you must first save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#). For iPhone apps, you may need to turn on iCloud to use their collaboration features. See [Set up iCloud on all your devices](#) in the [iCloud User Guide](#).

### Invite people to collaborate

You can invite people to collaborate on a project from another app, and then discuss your content in Messages. Share files from apps like [Notes](#), [Freeform](#), [Reminders](#), [Safari](#), [Keynote](#), [Numbers](#), [Pages](#), and more, as long as you first turn on their collaboration features in iCloud settings and save the content somewhere it can be accessed by others, such as [iCloud Drive](#).

The process for inviting someone to collaborate depends on the app. Here's one way you might start a collaboration in a supported app:

1. Select the file you want to share, then tap , or tap Collaborate.
2. Make sure Collaborate (rather than Send Copy) is selected, then tap the group or individual you want to collaborate with. If you don't see the group or person listed, tap .

The suggested icons may correspond with groups or individuals with active FaceTime calls or recent Messages conversations.

3. A Messages conversation opens with the invitation ready to send. Add a note (optional), then tap .



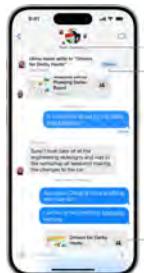
After you invite participants in Messages, you can work on the project in the other app and return to the Messages conversation by tapping the Collaborate button in that app.

**Draft**  
When someone edits the file, you see updates at the top of the Messages thread. To return to the shared project and see changes, tap an update.

**Note:** Your participants may need to accept your invitation or join the shared item before they can interact with it or see any updates.

## Collaborate on a project in Messages

After you share your project, you see activity updates at the top of the Messages conversation whenever someone makes an edit.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation that contains the invitation to the project you've started collaborating on, then do any of the following to return to the project:
  - Tap the file in your conversation to open it.
  - If you see an update at the top of the conversation, tap Show.
  - Tap the name of your participant or group at the top of the screen, scroll to Collaboration, then tap the shared project.

When you make any changes or edits to the project, your participants get updates in the conversation.

**Note:** If you add a new person to a group conversation, you have to grant them access to the projects you're collaborating on. If they've been added to the group conversation recently, you can tap a notification at the top of screen to add them. Or [invite them to collaborate](#).

## Manage the collaboration and group

The group of people in the Messages collaboration and the group collaborating on the file may not match. For example, you may invite people to collaborate on the file outside of Messages. Or you may have two different groups in Messages, each with its own collaboration conversation.

If you share a project with two or more people in a Messages conversation, you can add or remove participants.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation you want to manage, then tap the group icon at the top of the conversation to open details about the group's conversation.

- *Add new participants:* Tap Add, then add contacts. (You may need to scroll down to see Add.)

If you started collaborating with just one other person, you must start a new conversation to add people to the collaboration.

**Note:** You must add new participants to any files that were shared in the conversation before they joined. As you add participants, a notification appears at the top of the conversation. Tap Show in the notification to review the previously shared files you can add new participants to.

- *Remove a participant from the conversation:* Touch and hold their icon, then tap Remove from Group.

**Important:** The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. Check participant access in the app itself to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

When you add someone to a document you've shared with others earlier, you have the option of adding them to an existing conversation or keeping the conversations separate. People added to conversations aren't able to read messages sent before they joined the conversation.

### Stop collaborating on a project in Messages

The apps where the collaboration happens usually control access to the project. For example, if you're collaborating on a document in the Pages app, the Pages settings take precedence over the Messages settings. You can, however, [unsend](#) or [delete](#) the invitation from the conversation just as you would any other message.

**Important:** When you delete an invitation from a thread, that conversation is no longer associated with the collaboration, but it doesn't remove participants from the file. Check participant access in the app to remove viewing or editing privileges completely.

## Personalize backgrounds in Messages on iPhone

You can personalize the background of an iMessage conversation. After you do, other people in the conversation can decide if they want to add the background you choose on their devices too.

**Note:** To personalize the background of a conversation, you must use iMessage on iOS 26, iPadOS 26, macOS 26, watchOS 26, visionOS 26, or later and [add individuals to Contacts](#) or [name the group conversation](#).



## Use an animated background

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to add an animated background.
3. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation, then tap **Backgrounds**.
4. Tap **Color, Sky, Water, or Aurora**.
5. Swipe left to choose a style.

**Tip:** For Color, tap the swatches in the bottom corners to adjust the background and foreground colors.

6. Tap  to add the background to your conversation.

## Use a photo as a background

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation where you want to add a photo to the background.
3. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation, then tap **Backgrounds**.
4. Tap **Photo**, then tap to select a photo from your library.

**Tip:** If someone shared a photo you want to use as a background, touch and hold the message bubble containing the image, then tap **Set as Background**.

5. Do any of the following:
  - *Crop the image:* Pinch in or out.
  - *Remove the color:* Swipe left to Black & White.
  - *Apply a color filter:* Swipe left to Duotone or Color Wash, then tap the color swatch to change the palette.
6. Tap  to add the background to your conversation.

**Note:** You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings before a background image containing sensitive content is sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for sensitive images](#).

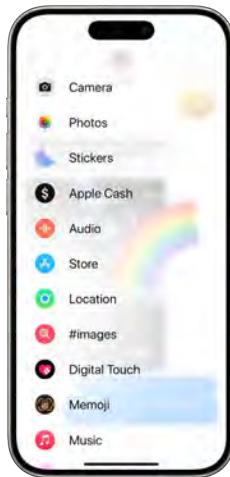
## Revert to a plain background

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Go to the conversation with a background you want to remove.

3. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation, then tap **Backgrounds**.
4. Tap **None**.

## Use iMessage apps in Messages on iPhone

You can take a poll, play a game, record audio messages, share songs, and more—all with iMessage apps—without leaving the Messages app. You can customize your list of available apps or add iMessage apps you find in the App Store.



### Rearrange iMessage apps

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Touch and hold any app icon in the list until it shrinks a little, then drag it to the location where you want it.

To move the app icon to a different page, drag it to the top or bottom edge of the menu. You might need to wait a moment for the new page to appear.

### Add iMessage apps

The Messages app comes with iMessage apps you can use to send [polls](#), [photos](#), [videos](#), [audio messages](#), [payments](#), [stickers](#), and more. You can download additional iMessage apps for even more options.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap **Store** to open the App Store for iMessage.
4. Tap an app to see more details and reviews, then do one of the following:
  - *Purchase an app:* Tap the price. Payments are made using the method associated with your [Apple Account](#).
  - *Download a free app:* Tap **Get**.

## Poll people in Messages on iPhone

**Draft**  
You can send a poll in any iMessage conversation to decide something, like what a group wants to eat, which movie to see, where to travel, when to meet, and more. Create a poll to let the group chat decide. Everyone in the conversation can contribute options and watch as votes come in.

**Note:** You must use iMessage on iOS 26, iPadOS 26, macOS 26, watchOS 26, visionOS 26, or later to start, see, or vote in a poll. Those who can't see it receive a message that a poll was sent to the group.

# FPO

## Start a poll

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap , then tap Polls.
3. Tap each row to add options as text. A poll can have up to 12 options.  
**Tip:** To add images, use emoji.
4. Add a comment if you'd like, or keep the message blank. The comment appears below the poll.
5. Tap .

## Vote in a poll

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Tap an option to add your vote. Tap again to remove your vote. You can vote for none or all of the options.

You can add [stickers](#) to voting options. Stickers don't count as votes.

## Add an option to a poll

Anyone participating in a poll can add an option to it.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Tap Add Choice, then enter another option.
4. Add a comment (optional), then tap  to add the option to the poll.

**Note:** Options are added without votes. Tap to vote for any option you add.

## Check on the results of a poll

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a poll in it.
3. Touch and hold the poll, then tap Poll Details.

# Take and edit photos or videos in Messages

**Draft**

# on iPhone

You can capture photos and videos directly in the Messages app. You can also modify the photos and videos before you send them by editing the image, marking it up, or adding effects.

*Note:* Your carrier may set size limits for attachments; iPhone may compress photo and video attachments when necessary.



## Send a photo or video

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Take a photo:* Tap Camera, then tap  to take a picture.  
To change the camera mode, tap Photo, then tap an option.  
To crop the photo, add filters, and more, tap Edit, then [use the editing tools](#).
  - *Take a video:* Tap Camera, tap Video, tap  to begin recording, then tap  to stop.  
To trim or crop the video, add filters, and more, tap Edit, then [use the editing tools](#).
  - *Add an existing photo or video:* Tap Photos, swipe up to search, browse through all photos, or change albums, then tap the images you want to send.  
To crop, add filters, or make other adjustments, tap the image in the message bubble, tap Edit, then [use the editing tools](#).
4. To add stickers, labels, and shapes to your photo, tap Markup, then [use Markup](#). When you're done, tap Save.
5. Tap Done to add the photo or video to the message bubble, add a comment (optional), then tap  to send your message.

*Note:* To send SMS, MMS, or RCS attachments on [models with Dual SIM](#), you need to [set up Dual SIM](#).

You can also send a photo or video with a [Digital Touch effect](#) or [record a video message](#) in the FaceTime app.

Draft  
Note: You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for sensitive images](#).

## Send photos faster

You can send smaller-sized previews of images so your recipients get them right away, before the full-resolution images arrive.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on Send Low Quality Photo Previews.

When Low Data Mode is on, only the preview is sent. See [Manage roaming options and choose other cellular data options](#).

To remove a photo or video from the message bubble before sending it, tap .

**Note:** Attachments you send over [iMessage](#) (such as photos or videos) may be uploaded to Apple and encrypted so that no one but the sender and receiver can access them. To improve performance, your iPhone may automatically upload attachments to Apple while you're composing a message. If you decide not to send your message, the attachments are deleted from the server after several days.

# Share content in Messages on iPhone

You can share images, links, and other content using the Messages app. When someone shares content with you, you can find it in a Shared with You section in the corresponding apps. Apps that support Shared with You include Photos, Music, News, and more.

## Share content with others

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, do one of the following:
  - [Copy and paste](#) an image or a link into the text field.
  - Tap , tap Photos to browse recent photos and videos, then tap to add.
  - Tap a message attachment, tap , then tap a contact or .
3. Add a message (optional), then tap .

From another app (like Podcasts, News, or Music), select the content you want to share, tap , tap Share, then choose Messages.

## Find all the content someone shared with you

1. Go to the Messages app .
2. Open the conversation whose content you want to see.
3. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation.
4. Swipe left, then tap Photos, Links, Documents, Locations, or Wallet.

If a category doesn't appear, they didn't send you anything of that type.

**Note:** Content only appears in Shared with You if the person who sent it is in your contacts.

You can find a Shared with You section in [Photos](#), [Safari](#), [Music](#), [Podcasts](#), and other supported apps. If you don't want items someone sends to you to appear in those other apps, tap their name at the top of the conversation, tap Info, then turn off Shared with You.

## Review and save photos or videos

If you receive multiple photos or videos at the same time, they're automatically grouped into a collage (two to three items) or a stack (four or more).

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Look inside a stack:* Tap to open, then swipe through a stack to view, reply, or interact with each photo or video individually.
  - *Save a photo or video:* Tap  next to the photo or stack.

## Pin shared content

If someone shares content that's especially interesting, you can quickly pin it in Messages, and it's elevated in the Shared with You section of supported apps, in Messages search, and in the conversation details (the info you see when you tap the name at the top of the conversation).

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with the content you want to pin.
3. Touch and hold the message bubble containing the link, then tap .

*Note:* Photos can be saved to your library, but not pinned.

## Hide shared content

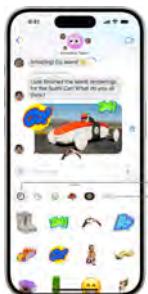
You can adjust your settings to hide an app's Shared with You section.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Shared with You, then turn off Automatic Sharing, or turn off Shared with You for a specific app.

*Note:* You can have your (or a family member's) iPhone receive warnings about sensitive content and warn you before it's sent or received. See [Receive warnings about sensitive content](#) or [Check for sensitive images](#).

# Send stickers in Messages on iPhone

Express yourself by adding stickers that match your personality and mood to your text messages.



## Send a sticker in a message

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Stickers, then tap the icon for any of the following sticker packs:
  - *Live Stickers you or a friend made:* Tap . See [Create Live Stickers](#) and [Save other people's Live Stickers](#), below.
  - *Emoji:* Tap .
  - *Memoji:* Tap , tap a Memoji in the top row to view the stickers in the sticker pack, then choose a pose or expression. See [Create Memoji](#).
  - *Stickers from other creators:* Download a sticker app from the App Store. See [Add iMessage apps](#).
4. Add a message (optional), then tap .

You can also send stickers from the emoji keyboard. See [Make a sticker with the iPhone keyboard](#).

## Place stickers on a conversation

You can add stickers on message bubbles in conversations, and angle the stickers or make them different sizes. You can also place a sticker on top of another sticker.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Stickers, then tap an icon—such as , , or —in the top row to browse a sticker pack.
4. Drag a sticker onto a bubble, then do any of the following:
  - *Adjust the angle:* Rotate a second finger around the finger dragging the sticker.
  - *Adjust the size:* Move a second finger closer to or away from the finger dragging the sticker.

Your recipients see the sticker as soon as you place it on a message.

To find out who sent a sticker in a conversation, touch and hold the sticker, then tap Sticker Details.

**Tip:** Quickly add stickers to messages. Touch and hold a message, tap Add Sticker, then choose a sticker to appear on a corner of that message bubble.

## Move, resize, or delete stickers

After you place a sticker on top of message bubbles in conversations, you can make changes to it.

Do any of the following:

- *Move or resize a sticker:* Touch and hold the sticker, then make any changes.
- *Delete a sticker:* Touch and hold the message bubble, tap Sticker Details, swipe left on the sticker you want to delete (on your iPhone only), then tap .
- *See any text covered by a sticker:* Double-tap the message bubble.

To change stickers sent in a message bubble, see [Unsend and edit messages](#).

**Note:** You and your recipients must be using iOS 17.2, iPadOS 17.2, macOS 14.1, watchOS 10.2, visionOS 1, or later, to see these updates to stickers.

## Create Live Stickers

You can create your own Live Stickers to use in messages by lifting subjects from photos and adding effects that help bring the stickers to life.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap , tap New Sticker, tap a photo, then tap Add Sticker.

**Tip:** To create a Live Sticker that moves, use a Live Photo. See [Make stickers from your photos](#).

4. To add an effect, touch and hold the sticker, tap Add Effect, choose an option (such as Comic or Shiny), then tap Done.

## Save other people's Live Stickers

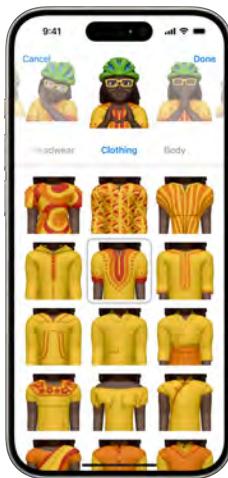
When someone sends you a Live Sticker you like, you can save it to reuse later.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with a sticker you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the sticker, then do one of the following:
  - *For a sticker sent in a message:* Tap Save to Stickers.
  - *For a sticker placed on a message bubble:* Tap Sticker Details, then tap Save.

You can also [create and send Memoji](#) that use your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

## Create and send Memoji in Messages on iPhone

You can design your own personalized Memoji—choose skin tone, glasses, body, and more. You can create multiple Memoji to use in different contexts. Each Memoji—even the ones you create—automatically generates a range of poses and expressions. On [supported models](#), you can send animated Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.



## Create Memoji

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Memoji. (You may have to swipe up.)
4. Tap .

**Tip:** To make a new Memoji whose outfit or appearance differs slightly from one you already have, tap to select it, tap , then tap Duplicate.

5. Tap each feature (Skin, Hairstyle, and others to the right) and choose the options you want.
6. Tap  to save the Memoji to your collection.

## Send animated Memoji or Memoji recordings

On [supported models](#), you can send Memoji messages that record your voice and mirror your facial expressions.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Memoji, then swipe and tap to choose a Memoji.
4. Tap  to record your facial expressions and voice, then tap  to stop.

Tap Replay to review your message.

5. Tap  to send your message or  to cancel.

You can also [become a Memoji](#) in a FaceTime conversation.

## React with Tapbacks in Messages on iPhone

Tapbacks give you a quick and easy way to respond to a message, such as a heart, a thumbs-up or thumbs-down, laughter, exclamation points, a question mark, and any sticker, Memoji, or emoji.



## React with a Tapback

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message.
4. Swipe left to see suggested emoji and stickers, or tap , then tap to choose any of the following kinds of Tapbacks:
  - *Other emoji:* Tap  (jump to other emoji categories with icons to the right of ).
  - *Stickers:* Tap .

The Tapback is attached to a specific message in a conversation, and everyone who's part of the conversation can see it.

## Find out who sent a Tapback

If there's more than one Tapback for a message, they appear in a row. You can find out who added each Tapback.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with Tapbacks.
3. Double-tap (or touch and hold) a message with Tapbacks.

Senders and their tapbacks appear near the top of the screen.

## Edit or remove your Tapback

You can only edit or remove Tapbacks you added. You can't edit or remove Tapbacks other people added.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation.
3. Tap your Tapback, then do one of the following:
  - *Use a different Tapback:* Tap a different emoji, Memoji, or sticker.
  - *Remove the Tapback:* Tap the same Tapback you used (so it's not highlighted).

You can only add one Tapback per message. If you want to send additional stickers, see [Place stickers on a conversation](#).

# Style and animate messages on iPhone

You can better express yourself in the messages you send by formatting, styling, or animating the text in your message, the message bubble, or the entire screen.

**Note:** To send and receive messages with text formatting or text effects, you and your recipients must be using [iMessage](#). Messages appear in plain text when sent to devices using older or other operating systems.

## Format or animate text within messages

Style the text in your messages with bold, italics, and underlining, or add playful, animated effects like explode or shake to any letter, word, or sentence—even emoji—in texts you send using iMessage.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message, then select the text you want to format or animate.

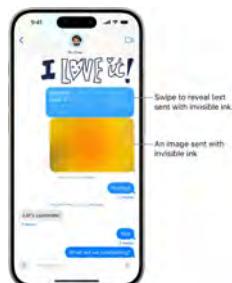
The Messages app may suggest effects to apply as you enter your message.

3. Tap  above the keyboard, then select your preferred style (bold, italic, underline, or strikethrough) or animated effects (big, small, shake, nod, explode, ripple, bloom, or jitter).
4. Tap .

You may apply a style or animated effect a single word, emoji, word, or sentence, or you can apply it to the entire message—tap  before you enter it.

## Animate the message bubble

Use effects to animate the message bubble: you can send a message with Slam or Loud so that it appears to pop out, or use Gentle so it arrives softly. You can even send a personal message with Invisible Ink that remains blurred until the recipient swipes to reveal it.

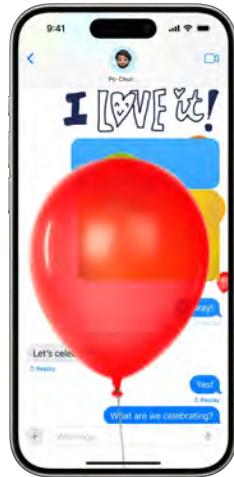


1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message or insert an image or link.
3. Touch and hold , then tap a gray dot to preview a bubble effect.
4. Tap  to send the message with the effect or  to cancel the effect and return to your message.

If you don't see a bubble effect or want to turn off effects on messages you receive, see [Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#).

## Animate effects over the full screen

You can send messages with full-screen effects—such as lively lasers, a moving spotlight, or echoing bubbles—that play when your recipient gets your message.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, enter a message or insert a photo or Memoji.
3. Touch and hold , then tap Screen.
4. Swipe left to preview different screen effects.
5. Tap  to send the message or  to cancel the effect and return to your message.

Messages automatically uses the following screen effects for specific text strings:

- Balloons for "Happy birthday"
- Confetti for "Congratulations"
- Fireworks for "Happy New Year"

If you don't see a full-screen effect or want to turn off effects on messages you receive, see [Stop or reduce onscreen motion](#).

## Draw and handwrite messages on iPhone

You can send messages with handwriting, doodling, and more.

You need [iMessage](#) to exchange drawn or handwritten messages.



## Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect

With Digital Touch, you can send animated sketches, taps, kisses, heartbeats, and more, on their own or as an effect on a photo or video.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Swipe up, tap Digital Touch, then do one of the following:
  - *Send an animated gesture:* Tap or touch and hold with one or two fingers. Your gesture is sent automatically when you finish it.

Touch and hold the color dot to choose a color for the one-finger taps.

*Note:* If you have Apple Watch or another sensor that records heartbeat data, Messages may use the recorded data when you touch and hold with two fingers to send a heartbeat.

  - *Send an animated drawing:* Draw with one finger.

You can change the color, then start drawing again.

  - *Add an effect to a new image:* Tap , then tap  to take a photo or  to record a video.

To take a new photo or video, or to erase anything you draw on your preview, tap .
4. Tap  to send your drawing or image, or tap  to delete it.

To send an animated doodle on a white background, see [Send a handwritten message or doodle](#).

## Send a handwritten message or doodle

Use your finger to write a message or draw a doodle. Recipients see what you wrote or drew, re-created before their eyes.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.

2. In a conversation, rotate iPhone to **Landscape** orientation.
3. Tap **✓** on the keyboard.
4. Write a message with your finger or choose a saved message at the bottom, then tap **Done**.
5. Tap **●** to send your message or **●** to cancel.



After you create and send a handwritten message, the message is saved at the bottom of the handwriting screen. To use the saved message again, tap it. To delete the saved message, touch and hold it until the messages jiggle, then tap **●**.

To send a doodle on a black background, see [Send a Digital Touch gesture, animation, or effect](#).

## Send and save GIFs in Messages on iPhone

You can search **#images** to find hundreds of trending GIFs you can add to your text messages and save GIFs others send to you (not available in all countries or regions).

### Add a GIF from **#images**

1. Go to the Messages app **□** on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap **+**, then tap **#images**. (You may have to swipe up.)
3. To search for a specific GIF, tap "Find images," enter a keyword (like "birthday"), then tap a search suggestion or **Q**.
4. Tap a GIF to add it to your message, then tap **●**.

*Note:* GIFs from **#images** animate only in the Messages app on Apple devices.

### Save a GIF

You can save a GIF that you receive in a message to use again later.

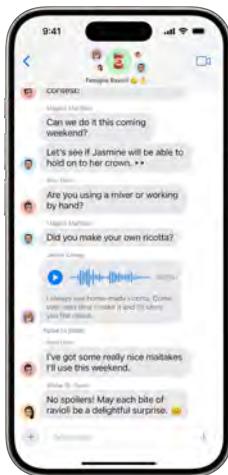
1. Go to the Messages app **□** on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation that includes the GIF that you want to save.
3. Touch and hold the GIF, then tap **Save**.

The GIF is saved to the Photos app. See [Send a photo or video](#).

## Send and receive audio messages in Messages on iPhone

You can record and send audio messages, along with transcripts of what's said in the message. Audio messages are automatically deleted to save space on your iPhone, but if you want to save them, you can.

*Note:* Audio message transcription available in select languages. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Record and send an audio message

Instead of writing a text message, you can record an audio message that can be played right in the Messages conversation.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Audio, then begin speaking.
4. Tap  to pause or end your recording, then do any of the following to your message:
  - *Send it:* Tap .
  - *Listen to review it:* Tap .
  - *Add to the end of it:* Tap  (with the message duration).
  - *Cancel it:* Tap .
5. Tap Keep to save an incoming or outgoing audio message on your iPhone.

Otherwise, the recording is deleted from the conversation—on your iPhone only—2 minutes after you send or listen to it. Recipients can play your recording any time after they receive it. To save it, they need to tap Keep within 2 minutes after listening to it.

**Tip:** Send follow-up audio messages more quickly by tapping  in the text field above the keyboard.

Audio messages are automatically transcribed in the language chosen in the sender's Settings. See [Change the language and region](#) to switch to another language for your outgoing messages.

## Always keep audio messages

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Tap Expire (below Audio Messages), then tap Never.

## Listen or reply to a recorded audio message

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation with an audio message, then tap  to play it.

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- Slide right and left on the audio message to fast-forward or rewind.
- Touch and hold or to adjust the playback speed.

4. Tap **Keep** to save an audio message in the conversation.

To save the message in the Voice Memos app , touch and hold the audio message, then tap **Save to Voice Memos**.

## Use Raise to Listen

When you receive an audio message, you can move your iPhone to play and reply to the message. Do either of the following:

- *Play an audio message*: Raise your iPhone to your ear.
- *Reply to an audio message*: Lower your iPhone and raise it to your ear again, then speak after you hear a tone. Tap to send your reply.

## Turn off Raise to Listen

If you don't want audio messages to play when you raise your iPhone to your ear, you can turn the feature off.

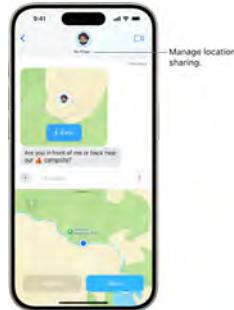
1. Go to the **Settings** app on your iPhone.
2. Tap **Apps**, then tap **Messages**.
3. Turn off **Raise to Listen**.

## Switch to FaceTime from Messages

You can quickly make an audio or video call instead of sending a message by switching to FaceTime. In a **Messages** conversation, tap .

# Share your location in Messages on iPhone

You can let others know where you are (or find out where they are) by using location sharing.



## Share and update your location automatically

When you share your location in a **Messages** conversation, it updates in real time right in the conversation. You can share your location by tapping **Current Location** (above the keyboard) when somebody asks where you are, or do the following:

1. Go to the **Messages** app on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap **Location**, then tap **Share**.

4. Decide how long you want to share <sup>Draft</sup> your location.

Tap Indefinitely if you want to share your location until you manually stop sharing it.

5. Tap  to send your location. (Or tap  if you change your mind.)

If you share your location to a group and then add other people to the group, you can reshare your location to let everyone see where you are.

When you want to share your location in an SMS conversation, [send a pinned location](#) instead.

To use Messages to check in with someone—for example, to notify a family member or friend that you've made it to your destination safely, see [Send a Check In](#).

Messages uses the Find My app when you share your location. Learn how to [share your location](#) and [locate someone](#).

## Send a pinned location

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation, tap .
3. Tap Location, then tap  in the top left of the map, then drag the map until the pin is in the right place.
4. Tap Send Pin, then tap  to send your pin.

Pinned locations don't update as you move.

## Ask for someone else's location

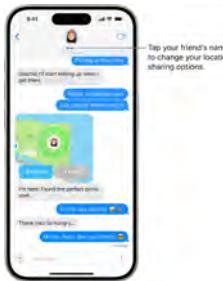
1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In a conversation with one other person, do one of the following:
  - Tap , tap Location, then tap Request.
  - Send a message that ends with the question, "Where are you?" then tap Request Location (above the keyboard).
3. Tap  to send your request.

After someone shares their location with you, their location appears below their name at the top of the conversation. Tap their name to see where they are on a map. Tap the map to enlarge it.

When you are near the person you're looking for and both of you are using an iPhone 15 model or later, you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location. See [Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend](#).

## Meet up with a friend

If both you and a friend are using [a supported model](#), you can use Find My to get precise directions to their location once you're near one another. See [Use Precision Finding to meet up with a friend](#).



Draft

## Stop sharing your location

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the conversation with someone you're sharing your location with, then tap the name of the person at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Stop Sharing My Location.

The previous bubbles in the conversation no longer display a map.

**Note:** Finding people with location sharing isn't available in all countries or regions. If you set up location sharing and others still can't see your location, make sure you've allowed access. Go to Settings  > Privacy & Security > Location Services > Find My, then choose an option. See [Control the location information you share](#).

## Turn read receipts on or off in Messages on iPhone

You can use read receipts to automatically let someone know when you've seen their text messages.

When read receipts are turned on, the sender sees the word "Read" below messages they've sent to you, indicating that you've read their message. If you haven't read their message, the sender sees "Delivered."

You can turn on read receipts for everyone or for individual contacts.

**Note:** To use read receipts, you and your recipient must turn on [iMessage](#).

### Turn on read receipts

You can turn on read receipts to let everyone know when you've opened their messages.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

**Note:** If you turned off read receipts for a particular contact, you have to turn the setting back on for that one contact individually. (See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), below.)

### Turn off read receipts

If you don't want others to know that you've opened their messages, you can turn off read receipts.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

Draft

Draft  
Note: This action affects only those conversations with contacts whose read receipts you never turned on individually. (See [Turn off read receipts for one person](#), below.)

## Turn on read receipts for one person

You can turn on read receipts in a conversation to let that one recipient know when you've seen their incoming messages, even if you turned off read receipts generally.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn on Send Read Receipts.

## Turn off read receipts for one person

If you turned on read receipts for an individual, but you want them to stop getting read receipts, you can turn the setting off for that one contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Send Read Receipts.

## Get read receipts when someone else sees your messages

You can't turn on read receipts for anyone but yourself. To receive read receipts when your messages are opened, ask the recipient to turn them on. See [Turn on read receipts for one person](#), above.

# Stop, mute, and change message notifications on iPhone

You can change whether or not you're notified about text messages you receive, and how the notifications appear or sound. For example, you can turn off message notifications so you aren't distracted by notification sounds when you're in a meeting or other quiet settings, or assign a special sound for certain contacts so you know when you get a message from them.

## Stop all notifications

You can stop getting notified about activity in the Messages app while continuing to receive messages. When you're ready to read them, you can open Messages to see the texts you missed while notifications were off, and [catch up on messages you missed](#).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off Allow Notifications.

Draft  
Note: Senders receive a note indicating that you have notifications silenced.

To let people know you've read their messages, see [Turn on read receipts](#).

When you want to get notified again, turn on [Allow Notifications](#). If you also want to hear them, make sure the Ring/Silent switch isn't in [Silent mode](#) and your [volume](#) is audible.

You can also stop notifications from other Apple apps and third-party apps. See [Change notification settings](#).

## Stop sharing your Focus Status with one person

When your [Focus](#) or [sleep schedule](#) pauses notifications, your status appears in the Messages app to let people know you're not receiving messages. You can turn this off in one-to-one conversations.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name of the person at the top of the conversation.
3. Turn off Share Focus Status.

## Mute sounds or vibrations for sent and received messages

When you send a message, a swoosh sound plays by default. When you receive a message, a tone plays. If you don't want to hear these sounds, you can set your text tone to None.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Notifications, then tap Messages.
3. Do either of the following:
  - *Mute sounds:* Tap Sounds, then tap None.
  - *Turn off vibrations:* Tap Sounds, tap Haptics (near the top), then tap None.

You can also put the Ring/Silent switch in [Silent mode](#).

*Note:* The None and the Ring/Silent switch setting affect both incoming and outgoing sounds. (You can't mute only one.)

See also [Flash the indicator light for notifications](#).

## Change the sound and vibration for notifications

You can set the sound volume for alerts, choose between a tone or sound for alerts, or change the notification vibration pattern (when the phone is silenced).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Make notifications quieter or louder:* Adjust the volume with the slider.
  - *Choose a tone or sound:* Tap Text Tone, then tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
  - *Choose a vibration pattern:* Tap Text Tone, tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).

**Tip:** The tone and vibration you choose apply to both the Messages app and other apps that have notifications on, such as Mail, Phone, and other Apple or third-party apps. To change them just for the Messages app, go to Settings > Notifications > Messages, then tap Sounds.

Draft  
You can set how many times to repeat a notification (from Never to 10 Times) in Settings  > Notifications > Messages > Customize Notifications > Repeat Alerts.

## Change the notification sound for certain people

You can choose a specific sound or vibration pattern to play when you get a message from a specific contact.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a conversation, then tap the number or name at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap Info, tap Edit in the top-right corner, tap Edit Contact Info, then tap Text Tone.  
If you don't see Edit, tap Create New Contact or Add to Existing Contact.
4. Do any of the following:
  - *Specify a tone or sound:* Tap a sound below Alert Tones (or tap Tone Store to download one).
  - *Specify a vibration pattern:* Tap Haptics, then choose an option (or tap Create New Vibration to make your own).
  - *Mute notifications for this conversation:* Tap None below both Haptics and Alert Tones.

To give this contact the option to override a Focus, so any important messages can get through, turn on Emergency Bypass. You might turn it on for a family member, caretaker, or colleague, for example.

## Mute one conversation

You can stop getting notifications for a conversation while you continue to receive its messages.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:
  - Swipe left on a conversation, then tap .
  - Tap a conversation, tap the name or number at the top of the conversation, then turn on Hide Alerts.

To completely stop getting messages for one conversation, you can [block a specific person or number](#) or [leave a group conversation](#).

## Announce messages

Siri can [announce messages](#) on your iPhone speaker, supported headphones, and when using [CarPlay](#).

To hear incoming messages on MFi hearing devices, see [Announce calls and notifications for specific apps](#).

# Screen, block, and report messages on iPhone

You can reduce the number of unwanted text messages you receive when you screen incoming texts from unknown senders, block individuals, and report spam or junk messages.

Draft

**Note:** A known sender is anyone you've added to the Contacts app or sent a message to.

Draft

## Screen messages from unknown senders

You can prevent unknown senders from texting you directly. Their messages are filtered to another folder, and you don't get notified about them.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the conversation list, then tap Manage Filtering.
3. Turn on Screen Unknown Senders.

When this is on, you only receive notifications for screened messages that you allow. See [Allow messages from some unknown senders](#), below.

*Note:* A change in the setting may not take effect immediately.

4. To detect and filter unknown RCS, SMS, and MMS messages, tap Text Message Filter, then tap to turn on Text Message Filter and any third-party message filtering extension you install.

*Note:* Text message filtering doesn't apply to any sender you've replied to 3 times or more. Try [blocking](#) and [reporting](#) those senders, as below.

5. To hide notifications and move screened messages to your Spam list, turn on Filter Spam.

*Note:* You can't open any links sent by an unknown sender until you make them a known sender by adding them to your contacts or replying to the message.

## Allow messages from some unknown senders

You can choose to be notified by certain types of unknown senders.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the conversation list, then tap Manage Filtering.
3. Turn on Screen Unknown Senders.
4. Tap Allow Notifications, then turn on or off each setting:
  - *Time Sensitive:* Alerts, verification codes, and urgent requests..
  - *Personal:* Messages not sent by businesses or organizations.
  - *Transactions:* Order updates, receipts, and confirmations.
  - *Promotions:* General offers and updates sent to many people.

## Find messages from unknown senders

If you turn on Screen Unknown Senders and you're missing a message, check to see if it was filtered to Unknown Senders.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the conversation list, then tap Unknown Senders.

## Block messages from a specific person or phone number

When you block a specific contact or phone number, messages from that person or number aren't delivered. (The person sending the message doesn't know that their messages are blocked.)

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Go to a conversation with the person you want to block, then tap the name or number at the top of the conversation.

3. Tap Info, scroll down, then tap Block Contact.

**Tip:** Instead of blocking all the senders in a group conversation, you can simply leave it or [stop its notifications](#).

If you're still having trouble with unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Block phone numbers, contacts, and emails on your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Report spam or junk messages

When you use [iMessage](#), you can report spam or junk messages to Apple—the report includes the sender's information and message. Depending on your carrier and country or region, reporting spam you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS shares this information with your carrier and its affiliates.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

- *If you haven't opened the message:* Swipe left on the message, tap , then tap Delete and Report Junk.
- *If you've already opened the message:* A Report Junk link appears at the bottom of any message from any unknown sender. Tap Report Junk, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

*Note:* You can't report a message after you've replied to it.

- *If you don't see the option to report spam or junk messages you receive with SMS, MMS, or RCS:* Contact your carrier. See the Apple Support article [Wireless carrier support and features for iPhone](#).

If you received the message with iMessage, it's sent to Apple with the sender's information, and the message is permanently deleted from your iPhone.

If you accidentally report and delete messages, you can [recover](#) them.

Reporting junk or spam doesn't *prevent* the sender from sending messages, but you can [block the number](#) to stop receiving them.

To decrease incoming spam or junk messages from new numbers, you can filter them. See [Screen messages from unknown senders](#), above.

## Check who you blocked

If you're not getting someone's messages, you can check if they're in your Blocked Contacts. A recipient can't find out if they're blocked.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.

3. Tap Blocked Contacts, then do any of the following:

- *Unblock a number you've blocked:* Swipe left on a number in the list, then tap Unblock. Or tap Edit, then tap .
- *Add additional contacts or numbers directly to the list:* Scroll down, then tap Add New.

## Turn off business alerts

Some businesses send alerts and updates on your orders and other transactions. You can turn these off.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Turn off any of the following:
  - *Apple Messages for Business*: Tap Messages for Business, then turn Business Updates off.
  - *RCS Business Messages*: Tap RCS Messaging, then turn RCS Business Messages off. (Availability varies by carrier and country.)

You can also report a message as junk when you receive it. Tap Report Junk in the conversation, then tap Delete and Report Junk.

See [Apple Messages for Business & Privacy](#).

To learn about other ways you can report and prevent unwanted messages, see the Apple Support article [Recognize and avoid phishing messages, phony support calls, and other scams](#).

## Delete messages and attachments in Messages on iPhone

You can delete text messages, attachments, and entire conversations from your iPhone anytime, without affecting what your recipients see.

**Tip:** Use [Undo send](#) to retract (within 2 minutes) a message you sent accidentally, deleting it from both your phone *and* your recipient's phone.

Deleted messages and attachments remain in your Recently Deleted folder for up to 30 days, and you can [recover](#) them.

### Delete messages and attachments

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a conversation, touch and hold a message bubble or attachment, then tap More.
3. Select the messages or attachments you want to delete, then tap .

You can also [delete a conversation](#) entirely.

### Delete multiple photos, videos, or other attachments

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the name of the person or group at the top of the conversation.
3. Tap a category, such as Photos.

To see only screenshots or videos, tap  in the bottom-right corner, then tap Screenshots or Videos.

**Tip:** To delete other particular types of attachments, such as links or documents, just tap the other categories, and adjust the steps below accordingly.

4. Tap Edit, then tap Select Photos.
5. Tap each photo you want to delete, tap , then tap to confirm the number of photos you want to delete.

## Delete a conversation

Draft

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. In the conversation list, do one of the following:
  - Swipe left on the conversation, then tap .
  - Touch and hold the conversation, then tap Delete.

## Delete multiple conversations

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. At the top of the conversation list, tap Edit.
3. Tap Select Messages, choose the conversations you want to delete, tap , then tap Delete.



## Permanently remove recently deleted messages and attachments

Deleted messages and attachments remain in the Recently Deleted folder for 30 days, but you can permanently remove them before that.

1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the conversation list, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to delete permanently, tap , then tap Delete.

**Important:** This can't be undone.

## Automatically delete old messages

You can delete messages and attachments that are older than 30 days or a year old, on an ongoing basis.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Messages.
3. Scroll down, tap Keep Messages (below Message History), then choose an option.

**Important:** If you choose an option other than Forever, your conversations (including all attachments) are automatically removed after the specified time period elapses.

Draft

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), deleting a message or conversation on your iPhone deletes it from all your devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

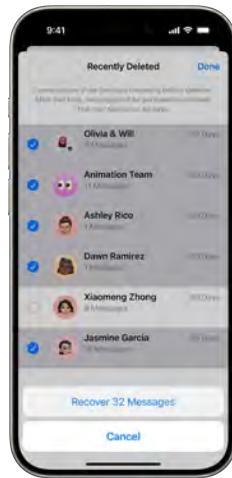
**Note:** Deleting messages only affects your iPhone and other Apple devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). You can't delete messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

To delete everything (not just your messages), see [Erase iPhone](#).

## Recover deleted messages in Messages on iPhone

You can recover deleted text messages you deleted on your iPhone.

You can restore messages you deleted for up to 30 days.



1. Go to the Messages app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the top of the conversation list, then tap Recently Deleted.
3. Select the conversations whose messages you want to restore, then tap Recover.
4. Tap Recover Messages.

If you use [Messages in iCloud](#), recovering a message or conversation on your iPhone recovers it on all your devices where Messages in iCloud is turned on. See [Keep your messages up to date with iCloud](#) in the iCloud User Guide.

**Note:** Deleting and recovering messages only affects your iPhone and other Apple devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). You can't recover messages, attachments, and conversations for anyone else.

Once you recover a blocked conversation whose participants haven't all [turned on iMessage](#), incoming messages are no longer automatically deleted.

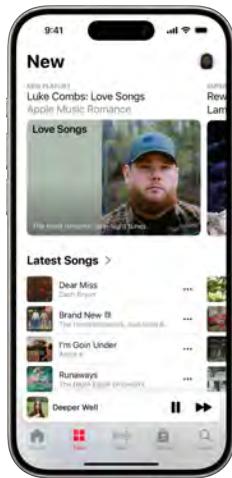
Any message that you remove from a conversation using [Undo Send](#) is permanently deleted. Audio messages that expire before being saved aren't recoverable. See [Send and receive audio messages](#).

## Music

# Get started with Music Draft on iPhone

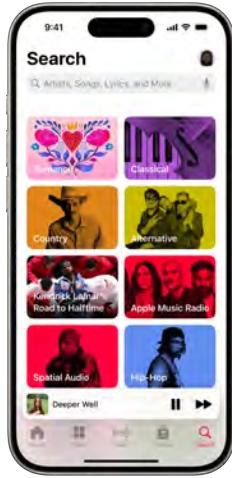
Listen to songs from your iPhone music library with the Music app. Stream music from the Apple Music catalog when you subscribe to Apple Music, and access your music library and Apple Music on all your devices when you sign in to the same Apple Account.

## Subscribe to Apple Music



To get the most from the Music app, subscribe to Apple Music, and choose from millions of songs to stream or download. Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then tap Join Apple Music. After you become an Apple Music subscriber, you can select artists as favorites (and receive notifications about them), view song lyrics, and more.

## Find music



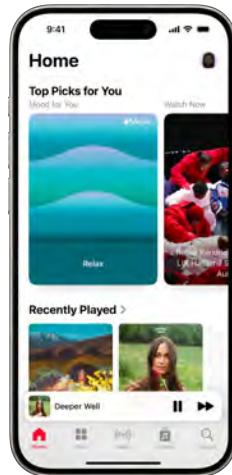
Use the Search feature to quickly find music. Tap Search at the bottom right of the screen to browse music by category or enter an artist, lyric, or other keyword in the field to find songs, albums, and playlists.

## Create a playlist

# FPO

Organize songs for a specific theme, mood, or occasion with a playlist. Tap Library, tap Playlists, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap New Playlist. To add a song to the playlist, tap ... next to a song, then tap Add to a Playlist.

## Build your library



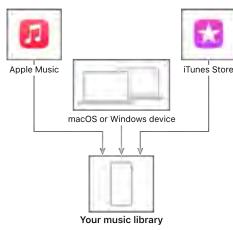
You can add music to your library in a variety of ways. For example, subscribe to Apple Music or buy your favorite albums from the iTunes Store. If you're already using a Mac, go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Music, then tap Sync Library—your entire music library is then available on your iPhone.

Want to learn more?

- [Subscribe to Apple Music](#)
- [Search for music](#)
- [Create, edit, and delete playlists](#)
- [Get music](#)
- [Get music](#)
- [Add music and listen offline](#)

## Get music on iPhone

Enjoy music stored on iPhone as well as music streamed over the internet. You can build a music library—your collection of songs and albums—in many ways.



Draft

**Note:** Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region. Additional charges may apply when using a cellular connection.

## Subscribe to Apple Music

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can start listening to millions of songs from the Apple Music catalog right away. To access your music library on all your devices, turn on Sync Library (go to Settings > Apps > Music). Then, [add and download songs](#) so that you can play your favorites any time, even when you're offline.

**Tip:** Purchase an Apple Music family subscription, and everyone in your Family Sharing group can [share an Apple Music subscription](#).

## Buy music from the iTunes Store

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music and you want to add your favorite songs or albums, you can [buy and download music](#) from the iTunes Store. And, if you previously purchased items from the iTunes Store, you can [download them](#) to your authorized computers and devices (up to 10 total).

## Transfer music from your Mac or Windows device

Connect your Mac or Windows device to transfer and update music between your iPhone and your device. To [sync supported content](#), use Music (macOS 10.15 or later) or iTunes (macOS 10.14 or earlier and Windows devices).

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

# Apple Music

## Subscribe to Apple Music on iPhone

Apple Music is an ad-free streaming music service that lets you play millions of songs and your music library. As a subscriber, you can listen any time—online or off—and create your own playlists, stream and download lossless and Dolby Atmos music, get personalized recommendations, follow artists, see music your friends are listening to, watch exclusive video content, and more.

You can subscribe to Apple Music or to Apple One, which includes Apple Music and other services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

Draft

**Note:** Apple Music, Apple One, lossless, Draft and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Subscribe to Apple Music

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to subscribe to Apple Music.

If you don't subscribe to Apple Music when you first open the Music app, you can subscribe later—go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Music**, then tap **Join Apple Music**.

New subscribers can start a trial and cancel at any time. If you end your Apple Music subscription, you can no longer stream Apple Music songs or play Apple Music songs you downloaded.

Qualified students can purchase a student subscription at a discounted price. See the Apple Support article [Get an Apple Music student subscription](#). Go to the [Apple Music website](#) to learn more about Apple Music and pricing.

## Share Apple Music with family members

When you subscribe to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple Music with up to five other family members. Once your [family is set up](#), your family group doesn't need to do anything—Apple Music is available to them the first time they open the Music app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple Music, Apple One Family, or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

**Note:** To stop sharing Apple Music with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#), or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

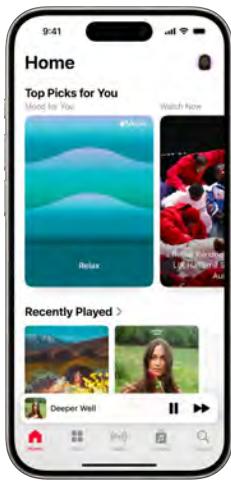
## Change or cancel your Apple Music subscription

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap **Manage Subscription**, then follow the onscreen instructions.

If you're not a subscriber, you can use Music to play music synced to iPhone from a Mac or a Windows device, play and download previous iTunes Store purchases, and play Apple Music radio for free.

## Get personalized recommendations in Music on iPhone

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can make selections so that you see playlists, albums, and songs based on your preferences. If you don't want Music to make recommendations, you can also turn off your listening history.



## Select your favorite genres and artists

When you first tap Home, you're asked to tell Apple Music what you like. Apple Music uses these preferences when recommending music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the genres you like (double-tap those you love, and touch and hold the genres you don't care for).
3. Tap Next, then do the same with the artists that appear.

## Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits

You can turn off your listening history so that Apple Music ignores your listening habits and adjusts new music recommendations and the contents of Replay playlists.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Turn off Use Listening History.

This action also hides all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music. To hide only certain playlists or albums, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

**Tip:** You can [create a custom Focus](#) to turn off Use Listening History. For example, if you're a parent listening to your favorite songs and your child wants to listen to something they like, you can [turn on that Focus](#) so their songs don't influence your recommendations.

## Mark items as favorites in Apple Music on iPhone

You can mark items as "favorites" in Music to make them easier to find. If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can get notifications on new releases from your favorite artists, and easily get back to their music from the Home tab.

### Add favorite playlists, artists, albums, and songs

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Add a favorite playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap ⋮ when viewing a playlist, then tap Favorite.
- *Add a favorite artist:* Go to an artist page, then tap ★ at the top of the screen.

When you mark an artist as a favorite, they appear below Favorite Artists in Home, and their music is recommended more often.

- *Add a favorite album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Favorite. Or tap an album, tap ⋮, then tap Favorite.
- *Add a favorite song:* Touch and hold a song or tap ⋮ next to a song, then tap Favorite. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap ⓘ.

When you mark a song as a favorite, it appears in the Favorite Songs playlist. To view that playlist, tap Library, then tap Playlists.

You can easily find favorite items in your music library. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap ⓘ, then choose Favorites.

### Remove playlists, artists, albums, and songs as favorites

1. Go to the Music app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, choose Playlists, Artists, Albums, or Songs, tap ⓘ, then choose Favorites.
3. Touch and hold a playlist, artist, album, or song, then tap Undo Favorite.

**Tip:** To add songs to your library when you make them a favorite, go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Music, then turn on Add Favorite Songs.

## Add music to iPhone and listen offline

As soon as you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can add and download songs and videos from Apple Music to your music library. You can stream music you add to iPhone when you have an internet connection. To play music when you're not connected to the internet, you need to download it first.

Ask Siri something like, "Add this to my library" while playing something. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

### Add music from Apple Music to your library

1. Go to the Music app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then tap Add.
  - When viewing the contents of an album or playlist, tap + near the top of the screen to add the album or playlist, or tap ⋮ next to a song, then tap Add add that song.
  - On the Now Playing screen, tap ⓘ, then tap Add.

Music you add to iPhone is also added to other devices if you're signed in to the same Apple Account and have Sync Library turned on (go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

### Download music from Apple Music to your iPhone

Draft

Draft  
Before you can download music from Apple Music to your library, you need to turn on Sync Library. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library. Then follow these steps to download music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Download a song, album, or playlist:* Touch and hold music you added to your library, then tap Download.  
  
After you add a playlist or album, you can also tap ##SHOULD BE GRAY DOWN ARROW  at the top of the screen.
  - *Always download music:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn on Automatic Downloads.  
  
Songs you add are automatically downloaded to iPhone.
  - *See download progress:* On the Library tab, tap Downloading.

**Note:** If the music you're downloading is available in Dolby Atmos, the Dolby icon  appears next to the item, and you can download it either in Dolby Atmos or in stereo. To download music in Dolby Atmos when available, go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Download in Dolby Atmos. See [Play Dolby Atmos music](#).

## Delete music from your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the song, album, playlist, or music video, then tap Delete from Library.

## Manage storage space

To manage storage space, do any of the following:

- *Remove music and videos stored on iPhone:* Go to the Music app  on your iPhone, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, music video, TV show, or movie that you've downloaded, tap Remove Download.  
  
The item is removed from iPhone, but not from your music library on your other devices.
- *Free up music storage:* If iPhone is low on storage space, you can automatically remove downloaded music that you haven't played in a while. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music > Optimize Storage.
- *Remove all songs or certain artists from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music > Downloaded Music, tap Edit, then tap  next to All Songs or the artists whose music you want to delete.
- *Remove all Apple Music songs from iPhone:* Go to Settings > Apps > Music, then turn off Sync Library.

The songs are removed from iPhone but remain in your music library on your other devices. Music you purchased or synced also remains.

## Choose cellular data options for Music

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.

3. Turn on Cellular Data, then do any of the following:

- Turn Download over Cellular on or off.
- Tap Audio Quality, turn on Lossless Audio, then tap Cellular Streaming to choose a setting (None, High Efficiency, High Quality, Lossless, or High-Resolution Lossless).

High Quality, Lossless, and High-Resolution Lossless use significantly more cellular data than High Efficiency, which may incur additional charges from your cellular carrier. Songs may also take longer to start playing.

When you purchase access to movies, TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

## Pin albums, songs, and more in Music on iPhone

After you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can pin your favorite music to the top of your library so it's easily accessible.

### Pin music to the top of your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Pin a playlist:* Touch and hold a playlist or tap  when viewing a playlist, then tap Pin Playlist.
  - *Pin an artist:* Go to an artist page, tap  at the top of the screen, then tap Pin Artist.
  - *Pin an album:* Touch and hold an album, then choose Pin Album. Or tap an album, tap , then tap Pin Album.
  - *Pin a song:* Touch and hold a song or tap  next to a song, then tap Pin Song. Or on the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Pin Song.

*Note:* Pinned items appear at the top of your Library.

### Remove a pin from an item in your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, touch and hold a pinned item, then tap Unpin [item].

Optionally, tap , tap Edit Pins, then tap .

### Choose what happens when you tap a pinned item

When you tap a pinned item, you can customize what happens. For example, you can choose to open a pinned playlist page, play an album in its default order, or even play and shuffle songs for an artist.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, touch and hold a pinned item, tap Tap Action, then choose an action.

**Tip:** To automatically download items to your library when you pin them, go to **Settings**  > Apps > Music, then turn on Download Pins.

Draft

## Create a profile to share

### Create an Apple Music profile on iPhone

After you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can create an Apple Music profile that features your favorite playlists and what you're currently listening to. You can share your profile with friends you invite or with other Apple Music subscribers.

After you create a profile, you can choose the playlists you want to share. Additionally, you can view profiles created by friends or request to follow them and see what they're listening to.

#### Create a profile

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap .
3. Tap Set up Profile, then follow the onscreen instructions to create a profile.

After you finish setting up your profile, you can [find friends](#) whose music profile you'd like to follow or [choose who you share music with](#) (so you can show friends what you're listening to).

**Note:** If you're the organizer of a Family Sharing group, you can allow children ages 13 to 18 to create Apple Music profiles (or prevent them from doing so). Children under 13 can't create Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.) See [Block content and prevent iTunes & App Store purchases](#).

#### Edit your profile

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit to make updates.

You can edit your profile to [choose who you share music with](#) or to [choose music to share with your followers](#).

#### Delete your profile

You can delete your profile so that your playlists and music no longer appear in searches, and your music or profile isn't visible to your followers.

**Note:** Your Apple Music subscription, library, and playlists aren't affected if you delete your profile, but you're no longer able to see what your friends are listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile at the top of the screen, then tap Edit.
4. Scroll to the bottom, then tap Delete Profile.

If you create your profile again within 90 days, your previous information and followers will be restored.

Draft

**Note:** If you delete your profile, it might <sup>Draft</sup> take several minutes before it's no longer visible to your followers or in searches.

## Share music with friends on iPhone

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can share music with your friends. You can allow anyone to follow you or just those you choose, and block others.

### Choose music to share with your followers

By default, your followers see the playlists you create, but you can choose not to share some playlists.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then turn Shared Playlists on or off.

To share playlists with people who don't follow you, touch and hold a playlist, then tap Share Playlist.

**Note:** If you make changes to music you share—edit or stop sharing a playlist, for example—those changes are reflected on your followers' devices.

### Hide music from your followers

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Touch and hold the playlist or album (below Listening To).
5. Tap Hide from Profile.

The listening history for this item won't appear in your profile or be visible to the people who follow you. If you don't want your followers to see any of the music you listen to, tap Edit on the profile screen, then turn off Listening To at the bottom of the screen.

**Note:** It may take up to 10 minutes before music you hide is no longer visible to your followers.

To hide all the music you play from your followers on Apple Music, see [Tell Apple Music to ignore your listening habits](#).

### Share your profile

You can share your profile using email, Messages, or another app you choose.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile.
4. Tap ..., tap Share, then choose a sharing option.

You can also share the profile of anyone you follow, or who follows you.

### Choose who you share music with

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap  or your profile picture. Draft
3. Tap View Profile, tap Edit, then tap People You Approve to be followed only by people you choose. (Everyone includes all Apple Music subscribers who have a profile.)

For additional privacy settings, see [Hide music from your followers](#).

## Respond to follow requests

If someone requests to follow you, you can accept or decline the request. You receive requests only if you select People You Approve in your profile. See [Choose who you share music with](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Follow Requests, then accept or decline the requests.

You may receive follow requests in other ways—as a link in an email or a text message, for example. To accept, tap the link.

## Turn on or off notifications about your friends' activity

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) Friend Activity.

When the option is on, you get notified when friends follow you and add your playlists.

## Prevent users from following you

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold a profile picture, then choose Block.

People you block won't see your music or be able to find your profile. They can still play your shared playlists if they added them to their library.

## Report a concern

If you have a concern about a follower, touch and hold their profile picture, then tap Report a Concern.

# See what friends are listening to in Music on iPhone

After you [create an Apple Music profile](#), you can find and follow friends to see what they're listening to.

## Choose how to find friends

Before you can choose which friends to share music with, you need to allow Music to access your contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.

- *Allow Apple Music access to your contacts:* Select the Contacts on Apple Music option so Apple Music can access your contacts and recommend new friends to you periodically.
- *Allow friends to find you by Apple Account:* Select the Allow Finding by Apple Account option and friends who have your Apple Account information can see you as a recommended friend.

## Follow friends

There are several ways to follow people:

- Add friends when you [set up a profile](#).
- After you set up your profile, swipe to the bottom of the profile screen, tap Follow More Friends, then tap Follow next to those you want to follow.

You can follow friends who are in your contacts list and who use Apple Music.

- On the profile screen, touch and hold a profile picture, then tap Follow.
- Tap Search, enter a friend's name, tap it in the results, then tap Follow.

**Note:** You can only find friends who have an Apple Music profile using Search. Additionally, you must be 13 years or older to view Apple Music profiles. (Age restrictions vary by region.)

To see the people you're following and those who follow you, open the profile screen, then swipe up.

If a profile picture has a lock on it, you need to ask that person to follow them. After your request is accepted, you see the person's shared playlists and the music they're listening to.

## See what your friends are listening to

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then do any of the following:
  - *See what your friends are listening to:* Scroll down to Friends Are Listening To, then tap an item to play it.
  - *Listen to a mix of songs your friends are listening to:* Swipe left on Made For You, then tap Friends Mix.
  - *See what a follower or person you follow is listening to:* Tap  or your profile picture, then tap View Profile. Tap a person's profile picture to see shared playlists and music they're listening to. You also see their followers and the people they follow.

## Stop following friends

You can stop following a friend if you no longer want to see what they're listening to.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap View Profile, touch and hold the profile picture of a person you follow, then tap Unfollow.

## Find music

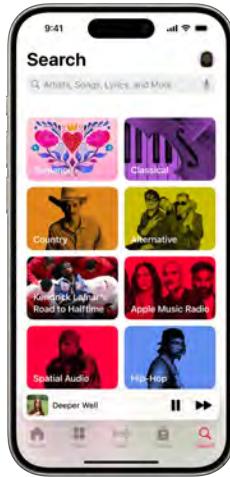
### Search for music on iPhone

Using Search, you can quickly browse through music categories, see recent searches, and search Apple Music or your library.

**Tip:** When you want to search, simply describe what you're looking for using natural language, such as "hit songs from movies" or "nostalgic songs from the '90s."

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Search, then do any of the following:
  - Tap a category such as Pop or Fitness.
  - Tap the search field to quickly find items you recently searched for—a song or artist, for example.
  - Tap the search field, tap Apple Music, then enter what you're searching for (such as a song, artist, or lyric).
3. Tap a result to play it.

Ask Siri something like, "Play the song with the lyrics" and then say a key phrase from the lyrics. [Learn how to use Siri](#).



Services and features aren't available in all countries or regions, and features may vary by region.

### Find music shared with you on iPhone

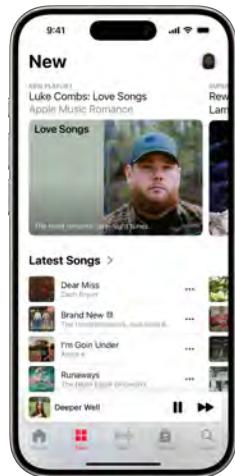
When a friend [shares music with you in the Messages app](#), you can easily find it in Shared with You in the Music app.

**Note:** Music must be turned on in **Settings** > Apps > Messages > Shared with You, and your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe up to Shared with You, then do any of the following:
  - Tap a song to listen to it.
  - Tap the name of the person, people, or group that shared the song to reply to them using Messages.
  - Touch and hold the song to take other actions—for example, add it to your library, create a station, reply to the sender, or remove it.

## Find new music with Apple Music on iPhone

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can browse new and noteworthy music, music videos, playlists, and more.



Discover new releases, featured music, and more

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap New to find new music, then Draft do any of the following:

- *Explore featured music:* Swipe through featured songs and videos at the top of the screen.
- *Browse playlists created by music experts:* Tap one of the many playlists created by music experts.
- *Explore new music:* Tap a song below the Latest Songs heading or swipe through the albums listed below New Releases.
- *See what's hot:* Tap a song below the Trending Songs heading. Swipe left to see more songs.
- *Listen to the top songs from around the world:* Tap one of the Daily Top 100 playlists. These playlists reflect the day's most popular songs in countries across the globe.
- *Listen to songs from upcoming albums:* Tap an album below Coming Soon, then tap an available song to play it.
- *Watch music videos:* Tap Music Videos, then tap a featured music video or playlist of music videos.
- *Play the day's most popular songs:* Tap Charts, then tap a song, playlist, album, or music video to play it. Tap All Genres at the top of the screen to see the top songs and music videos in a genre you choose.
- *Browse your favorite genres:* Tap Browse by Genre, choose a genre, then tap a featured playlist, song, album, artist, or radio station to enjoy music handpicked by music experts.
- *Play music that matches your mood:* Tap Moods and Activities, then tap a playlist such as Feel Good, Romance, or Party.

*Note:* To see more music, swipe left on the album art. To see all the music in a section—New Releases, for example—tap > next to the section's name.

## Discover your most-played music of the year

For every year you've subscribed to Apple Music (and played enough music to become eligible), Apple Music creates a Replay personal chart, ranking the songs you've played the most.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, swipe down to Replay: Your Top Music, then tap a year.

You can also find deeper insights into your listening throughout the year at [replay.music.apple.com](https://replay.music.apple.com). See the Apple Support article [How to get your Apple Music Replay](#).

## Discover music you've never played before

Using your listening history and taste profile, Apple Music recommends music you may like that you've never played before.

Ask Siri something like, "Play my Discovery Station." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Home, then swipe down to Stations for You.
3. Tap Discovery Station.

## Turn on or off new music notifications

Draft

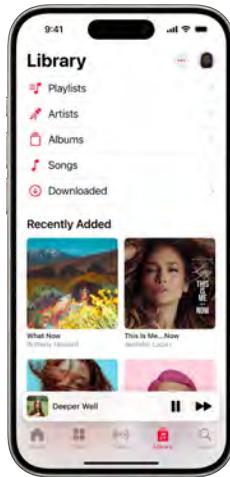
1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  or your profile picture.
3. Tap Notifications, then turn on (or off) New Music.

## Play music

### Play music on iPhone

Play music you added or downloaded from Apple Music, music and videos you synced to iPhone, and your iTunes Store purchases.

You can use Siri to search for and play music, add music to your library, and more. For example, [ask Siri](#) something like, "Play something I like." See [Play music and podcasts with Siri](#).



#### Play songs from your library

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap a category, such as Albums or Songs; tap Downloaded to view only music stored on iPhone.
3. Scroll to browse—or type in the search field to filter your results—to find what you want to play.
4. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

To change the list of Library categories, tap ..., tap Edit Sections, then select categories you'd like to add, such as Genres and Compilations. Tap any existing categories to remove them.

#### Stream recommended songs

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following to find music you want to play:

- *View recommendations tailored for you:* Tap Home, then tap a playlist or album.
- *See what's new in Apple Music:* Tap New, then find music by mood, new releases, charts, and more.
- *Search the Apple Music catalog:* See [Search for music](#).

3. Tap an item, then tap Play, or tap Shuffle to shuffle an album or playlist.

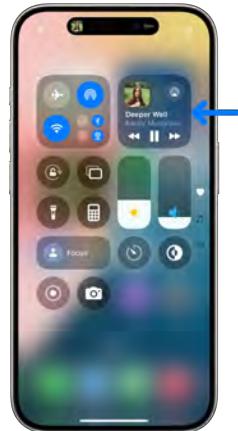
You can also touch and hold a playlist or album, then tap Play.

**Tip:** If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), when you listen to a playlist, the AutoMix feature transitions tracks at the perfect moment based on analysis of the key and tempo. It's on by default, but you can [turn it off in Settings](#)—or, just tap the <icon> in the Playing Next queue.

## Play music from the Lock Screen or when using another app

[Open Control Center](#), then tap the audio card.

**Tip:** You can also identify a song playing on or near iPhone by [adding the Music Recognition control to Control Center](#). Open Control Center, tap + at the top left, tap Add a Control at the bottom, then tap the Recognize Music icon. With a song playing, open Control Center, then tap ☰.



## Play music shared on a nearby computer

If a computer on your network shares music through Home Sharing, you can stream its music to your iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Sign In below Home Sharing, then sign in to your Apple Account.
4. Go to the Music app ⓘ, tap Library > Home Sharing, then choose a shared library.

## Sort your music

1. Go to the Music app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists, Albums, Songs, TV & Movies, or Music Videos.
3. Tap ..., then choose a sorting method, such as Title, Artist, Date Added, or Release Date.

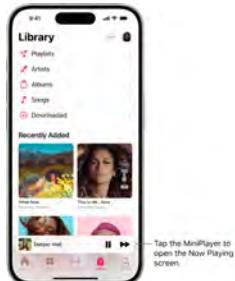
When you purchase access to movies, <sup>Draft</sup> TV shows, music, music videos, ebooks, audiobooks, or ringtones from Apple, you also have the option to permanently download these items to a compatible iPhone, iPad, Mac, or PC. Apple cannot revoke your downloaded content, and you can always access your downloaded content without an internet connection.

## Use the music player controls on iPhone

You can play and control music in the Music app  in two different ways—the MiniPlayer and the Now Playing screen.

### Use the MiniPlayer

The MiniPlayer shows the song that's currently playing. You can use the MiniPlayer to play or pause music, or skip to the next track.



### Use the controls in the Now Playing screen



1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Adjust the volume:* Drag the volume slider.

You can also use the volume buttons on the side of iPhone.

- *Scrub to any point in a song:* Drag the playhead.

- *Navigate to the artist, album, or playlist:* Tap the artist name below the song title, then choose an option.

- *Turn animated album cover art on or off:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then tap Animated Art and choose an option.

For additional control over your music, tap any of these buttons:

Control	Draft Description
	Dismiss the Now Playing screen.
	Mark the song as a favorite. See <a href="#">Mark items as favorites</a> .
	Tap for more options.
	Go back to the beginning of the song. Tap again to play the previous song in an album or playlist. Touch and hold to rewind through the current song.
	Pause playback.
	Play the current song.
	Skip to the next song. Touch and hold to fast-forward through the current song.
	Show time-synced lyrics (lyrics not available for all songs).
	Stream music to Bluetooth or AirPlay-enabled devices.
	<a href="#">Show the queue</a> .

## Stream music to Bluetooth® or AirPlay-enabled devices

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then choose a device.

See [HomePod and other wireless speakers](#).

**Note:** You can play the same music on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices, such as two or more HomePod speakers. You can also pair two sets of AirPods to one iPhone and enjoy the same song or movie along with a friend. See [Play audio on multiple AirPlay 2-enabled devices](#) in this user guide and [Share audio with AirPods and Beats headphones](#) in the AirPods User Guide.

## Play lossless audio in Music on iPhone

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can access millions of tracks encoded using lossless audio compression.

Draft  
Lossless compression is a form of compression that preserves all of the original data. Apple has developed its own lossless audio compression technology called Apple Lossless Audio Codec (ALAC). The entire Apple Music catalog is encoded using ALAC in resolutions ranging from 16-bit/44.1 kHz (CD Quality) up to 24-bit/192 kHz.

## What you need to know about lossless in Apple Music

- Streaming lossless audio over a cellular or Wi-Fi network consumes significantly more data. And downloading lossless audio uses significantly more space on your device. Higher resolutions use more data than lower ones.
- AirPods, AirPods Pro, AirPods Max, and Beats wireless headphones use Apple AAC Bluetooth Codec to ensure excellent audio quality. However, Bluetooth® connections aren't lossless.
- To get a lossless version of music that you already downloaded from Apple Music, just delete the music and redownload it from the Apple Music catalog.
- To play songs at sample rates higher than 48 kHz on iPhone, you need an external digital-to-analog converter.

Note: Apple Music and lossless aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Turn on Lossless Audio and choose audio quality settings

You can choose audio quality settings for cellular streaming, Wi-Fi streaming, and downloads.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Audio Quality, then tap Lossless Audio to turn it on or off.
3. Choose the audio quality for streaming and downloading audio.
  - Choose Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/48 kHz.
  - Choose Hi-Res Lossless for a maximum resolution of 24-bit/192 kHz.

The audio quality of streamed music depends on song availability, network conditions, and the capability of connected headphones or speakers.

## Identify lossless music

The Lossless icon  appears on album pages when the music is available in lossless audio.

To see the Lossless icon for music on the Now Playing screen, go to Settings  > Apps > Music > Audio Quality, then turn on Lossless Audio.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [About lossless audio in Apple Music](#).

## Play music in Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos on iPhone

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can play available tracks in Dolby Atmos, which creates an immersive, three-dimensional (*spatial*) audio experience on stereo headphones and speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.

Albums and songs available in Dolby Atmos have the Dolby icon  next to them. If a track is playing in Dolby Atmos, the icon also appears on the Now Playing screen.

**Note:** Apple Music and Dolby Atmos aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).



## Turn on Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Tap Dolby Atmos, then choose Automatic or Always On.
  - *Automatic:* Plays Dolby Atmos whenever iPhone is connected to compatible headphones such as AirPods 3, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, or to speakers or receivers compatible with Dolby Atmos.
  - *Always On:* Plays Dolby Atmos on any headphones or speakers. The Music app will attempt to play Dolby Atmos tracks on any headphones or speakers connected to iPhone.

Dolby Atmos will play on any headphones, but not all speakers will play Dolby Atmos as intended.

## Control Spatial Audio and head tracking on iPhone

When you play supported music on your iPhone with AirPods 3, AirPods Pro, or AirPods Max, you can use Spatial Audio and head tracking to create an immersive, theater-like environment with sound that surrounds you. Follow these steps to control Spatial Audio and head tracking in Control Center.

1. Wear your AirPods, then [open Control Center](#).
2. Touch and hold the volume control, then tap Spatial Audio at the lower right.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *Off:* Turns off both Spatial Audio and head tracking.
  - *Fixed:* Turns on Spatial Audio without head tracking.
  - *Head Tracked:* Turns on both Spatial Audio and head tracking. This setting allows the sound to follow the movement of your head.

The settings you choose are saved and applied automatically the next time you use that app. For example, if you tap Fixed while listening to a song in Apple Music, the Fixed setting is automatically used the next time you play a song in Apple Music.

**Note:** To disable head tracking for all apps on your iPhone, go to Settings > Accessibility > AirPods, tap your AirPods, then turn off Follow iPhone.

## Download songs in Dolby Atmos

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > Music.
2. Turn on Download in Dolby Atmos.

Draft  
For more information, see the Apple Support article [About Spatial Audio with Dolby Atmos in Apple Music](#).

## Listen to radio stations in Music on iPhone

Apple Music features six world-class radio stations (Apple Music 1, Apple Music Hits, Apple Music Country, Apple Music Club, Apple Música Uno, and Apple Music Chill), as well as a collection of stations based on different genres. These stations provide a great way to explore and enjoy new music or keep up with your favorites.

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Play Apple Music Country." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

You can also create your own custom stations, based on your pick of artist, song, or genre.

In addition to radio, you can play Apple Music TV, a free, 24-hour curated livestream of popular new music videos that includes exclusive premieres, music video blocks, live shows and events, chart countdowns, and more.

### Play Apple Music radio

You must be signed in to your Apple Account, but you don't need to [subscribe to Apple Music](#), to play live Apple Music radio stations and Apple Music TV.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, then tap one of the currently playing Apple Music radio stations.

*Note:* Because Apple Music radio stations are live radio, you can't rewind or skip songs.

### Choose a radio station by genre

You must [subscribe to Apple Music](#) to play curated radio stations, such as Stations by Genre.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Radio, scroll down, then tap a genre listed below Stations by Genre.
3. Tap a featured station.

### Create a station

You can create a radio station based on a particular artist or song. Chances are, if you like that artist or song, you'll like the music the station plays.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold an artist or song.
3. Tap Create Station.

To create a station on the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Create Station.

### Play broadcast radio stations

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Tune in to ESPN Radio." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

- *Search for a station:* Tap Search, enter the station in the search field, then tap a result to play the station.  
You can search for stations by name, call sign, frequency, and nickname.
- *Choose a station in the Radio tab:* Tap Radio, scroll up, then choose a station below the Local Broadcasters or International Broadcasters heading.

**Note:** You don't need a subscription to Apple Music to play broadcast radio. Broadcast radio isn't available in all countries or regions and not all stations are available in all countries or regions.

## Play music together using SharePlay on iPhone

You can use SharePlay while playing music on a HomePod, Apple TV, or other third-party Bluetooth® speaker, and everyone can control the music with their iPhone.

### Before you begin

- The host must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Participants must have an iPhone with iOS 18 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must have an internet connection and Bluetooth turned on.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music to a speaker—go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

### Start SharePlay from Music on your iPhone

To use SharePlay to play music together, you (the host) start on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the **MiniPlayer** to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then select a playback destination.

The music starts playing to the device you selected. See [Stream video and audio with AirPlay](#).

4. Tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .

A QR code appears; tap the QR code to enlarge it.

5. To begin controlling the music, participants can scan the QR code on your iPhone.

### Join SharePlay with the iPhone camera

1. Go to the Camera app  on your iPhone.
2. Point the camera at the QR code on an iPhone that's already joined SharePlay.

A button appears below the picture of the QR code.  
Draft

### 3. Tap the button, then tap Connect.<sup>Draft</sup>

The host receives a notification and must tap  on their iPhone to allow you to join.

**Tip:** After you approve a participant to join SharePlay, they're automatically approved the next time they join.

## Leave SharePlay

Tap  at the bottom of the Now Playing screen, then tap Leave or End.

## Play music together in the car using SharePlay and CarPlay on iPhone

Using SharePlay and CarPlay, you and your passengers can all control the music that's playing in the car.

Passengers can join SharePlay in two ways: by tapping a notification on their iPhone or by scanning a QR code, either on the CarPlay Now Playing screen or on the Now Playing screen of another passenger's iPhone.

## Before you begin

- The driver must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later and be an Apple Music subscriber.
- Passengers must have an iPhone with iOS 17 or later, but don't need to have an Apple Music subscription.
- Everyone must allow their contacts to discover them when playing music in the car—go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Discoverable by Nearby Contacts if it isn't on already.

## Start SharePlay with CarPlay on your iPhone

To use SharePlay in the car, you and your passengers each play a part.

1. Begin playing music from your iPhone using CarPlay.

A notification appears on the Lock Screen of passengers' iPhone devices. After they tap Connect, you receive a notification in CarPlay.

2. Tap a passenger's name, then tap  to allow the passenger to choose and stream music from your iPhone.

After you approve a passenger, they can join SharePlay in the future without going through the same process unless you end their access.

## Use a QR code to join SharePlay

You can also let passengers join SharePlay over Bluetooth® by scanning a QR code.

1. On the Now Playing screen in CarPlay, tap .

A QR code appears on the CarPlay screen.

2. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code.

A button appears below the picture of the QR code on their iPhone to request a connection to SharePlay. The passenger taps the button, then taps Connect.

3. Tap  on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

## Use a QR code to add other passengers

If you're a passenger using SharePlay to control music in a car, you can invite other passengers while the driver focuses on the road.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the Now Playing screen, then tap  at the bottom of the screen.

A SharePlay window appears, listing all the participants as well as a QR code for joining.
3. Ask a passenger to open the Camera app on their iPhone and point the camera at the QR code, tap the button that appears below the code, then tap Connect.

The driver taps  on the CarPlay screen to allow the passenger to join.

## Leave or end SharePlay in the car

- *If you're a passenger:* Tap  at the bottom of Now Playing, then tap Leave.
- *If you're the driver:* Tap End on the CarPlay screen.

## Adjust the sound in Music on iPhone

Change the way music sounds in the Music app  on iPhone with EQ and Sound Check. Use Crossfade or AutoMix to transition songs seamlessly. (Albums and some genres play without transitions.)

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding hearing loss, see [Important safety information](#).

## Use EQ and normalize volume levels

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap one of the following:
  - *EQ:* Choose an equalization (EQ) setting.
  - *Sound Check:* Normalize the volume level of your audio.

## Crossfade songs

You can crossfade songs, which creates a listening experience with simple song transitions and no audio gaps.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Song Transitions, then turn it on.
4. Tap Crossfade, then drag the slider to choose the length of the crossfade.

## Use AutoMix

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), when you [listen to a playlist](#), the AutoMix feature transitions tracks at the perfect moment based on analysis of the key and tempo. It's on by default, but you can turn it off, either [in the Playing Next queue](#), or in [Settings](#).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Tap Song Transitions, then turn it off (or [select Crossfade](#)).

To give feedback about AutoMix while a song is playing, tap the MiniPlayer to open the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap Report AutoMix Feedback.

## Queue up your music on iPhone

Use the queue to see a list of upcoming songs, add songs and videos to the queue, and see what you recently played.

### Use the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then tap a song to play it and the songs that follow.  
To reorder the list, drag . To do more, see [Manage the queue](#).
4. Tap  again to hide the queue.

### Add music and music videos to the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While browsing or playing music, touch and hold a song, album, playlist, or video, then choose an option:
  - *Add music right after the currently playing item:* Tap Play Next.
  - *Add music to the end of the queue:* Tap Play After or Add to Queue.

**Tip:** If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can add items to the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

### Use Autoplay to add songs to the queue

If [you're an Apple Music subscriber](#) and you're not sure what to play next, use Autoplay. Once you play something, Autoplay adds similar songs and plays them at the end of the queue. When Autoplay is on and a song is playing, the Autoplay icon  appears on the Playing Next queue.



1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then tap  at the top of the queue to turn Autoplay on.

When Autoplay is on, the button changes color. Tap it again to turn it off.

**Note:** When you turn off Autoplay on a device that uses your Apple Account—your iPhone, for example—Autoplay is turned off on all other devices that use the same Apple Account.

## Manage the queue

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Change the order of songs in the queue:* Drag the songs into the order you want them to play.
  - *Add more songs to the queue:* Scroll below the Queue section, then tap Add Songs to Queue.
  - *Remove a song from the queue:* Swipe left on the song, then tap Remove.
  - *See how many songs are in the queue:* Scroll to the bottom of the queue.

When [multiple songs are repeating](#), you can see how many songs will be repeated instead.

- *Remove all songs from the queue:* Tap Clear at the top of the queue.

**Tip:** If you're using HomePod to stream music and your friends are on [the same Wi-Fi network](#), they can reorder items in the queue. To learn more about HomePod speaker access, see the [HomePod User Guide](#).

## See what you recently played

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then swipe down to see your playing history.

To play a song in the history, tap it. To remove your playing history, tap Clear.

**Tip:** If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), when you listen to a playlist, the AutoMix feature transitions tracks at the perfect moment based on analysis of the key and tempo. It's on by default, but you can [turn it off in Settings](#)—or, just tap the <icon> in the Playing Next queue.

## Shuffle or repeat songs in Music on iPhone

You can shuffle all songs and albums in your library (play them in random order) or just shuffle a playlist or album. You can also repeat individual songs, playlists, or albums.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Play your songs in random order (shuffle):* Tap . Tap again to turn off shuffle.
  - *Repeat an album, playlist, or the entire queue:* Tap .

*Note:* When multiple songs are repeating, you can view how many songs will be repeated—just scroll to the bottom of the queue.

- *Repeat a single song:* Double-tap .

## Sing along with Apple Music on iPhone

[Apple Music subscribers](#) can use Apple Music Sing to view real-time, beat-by-beat lyrics for select songs, as well as adjust the volume of a song's vocals—allowing you to sing along with the music while viewing the lyrics as they're highlighted.

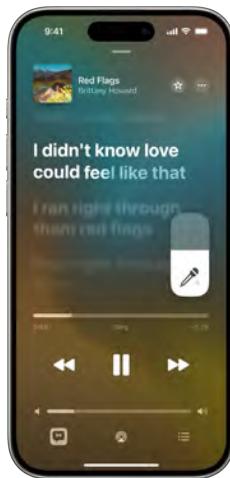
*Note:* Apple Music Sing is available on iPhone 11 or later with iOS 16.2 or later, except for iPhone SE (2nd generation).

### Adjust the volume of a song's vocals

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen, then tap .
3. Touch and hold , then drag the slider up or down to adjust the vocal volume.
4. To turn off Apple Music Sing for the song, tap the slider.

**Tip:** When you need help pronouncing or translating the lyrics, tap <icon>, then choose Show Pronunciation or Show Translation.

If you're listening to a song playing with Dolby Atmos and you turn on Apple Music Sing, Dolby Atmos turns off and the song plays without surround sound. If you turn off Apple Music Sing, the song plays with Dolby Atmos.



## Sing onscreen with visual effects on Apple TV 4K

You can use your iPhone as a Continuity Camera to see yourself singing onscreen along with the lyrics. You can also use your iPhone as a microphone to amplify your voice right through your Apple TV 4K (3rd generation). Add visual effects to your image and lyrics to enhance the singalong experience.

See [Use iPhone as a webcam](#) and [Use Apple Music Sing on Apple TV](#) in the Apple TV User Guide.

"Red Flags" written by Brittany Howard.

## Show song credits and lyrics on iPhone

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can show song credits and view and share lyrics.

### Show song credits

You can view song credits that include performing artists, composition and lyrics, production and engineering roles, and available audio quality.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen, tap , then tap [View Credits](#).
  - Tap  next to a song in a list, then tap [View Credits](#).

### Show and hide time-synced lyrics

Time-synced lyrics appear for many songs in Apple Music.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen, then tap  [##SHOULD BE GRAY](#) .

3. Do any of the following: Draft

- *Jump to a certain verse:* Tap a specific lyric—the first line of the chorus, for example—to go to that part of the song.
- *Get help pronouncing or translating the lyrics:* Tap <icon>, then choose Show Pronunciation or Show Translation.
- *See all of a song's lyrics:* Tap ⓘ, tap View Credits, then tap View Lyrics.

4. To hide the lyrics, tap ##SHOULD BE GRAY ⓘ.

## Share lyrics

You can share up to 150 characters of a song's lyrics if time-synced lyrics are available.

1. Go to the Music app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. While a song is playing, tap the **MiniPlayer** to open the Now Playing screen.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Share Lyrics.

You can also touch and hold a lyrics line to open the sharing screen.

4. Tap the first and last lyrics you want to share, then choose a sharing option.

## Report a concern

To report a concern about time-synced lyrics, tap ⓘ, then tap Report a Concern.

# Tell Apple Music what you enjoy on iPhone

You can make a song or album a favorite so that you can easily find and play it again later. If you dislike a song or album, you receive fewer suggestions for similar music.

## Tell Apple Music what you enjoy

1. Go to the Music app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Touch and hold an album, playlist, or song, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.
  - On the Now Playing screen, tap ⓘ, then tap Favorite or Suggest Less.

Telling Apple Music what you like and dislike improves future recommendations.

## Rate music in your library

1. Go to the Settings app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Music.
3. Turn on Show Star Ratings.

*Note:* This option only appears if you already added a star rating to a song in your music library on your Mac or Windows device, and Sync Library is enabled on your iPhone (go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library).

4. Go to the Music app ⓘ, touch and hold a song in your library, tap Rate Song, then choose a rating from one to five stars.

Draft

## Organize songs in playlists

### Intro to playlists in Music on iPhone

A playlist is a custom compilation of songs and music videos. You might want to create a playlist to do the following:

- Suit a specific mood or occasion. For example, you could create a playlist for a dinner party, a wedding, or your morning workout.
- Select certain songs to share with others on your local network or to sync with your Mac or Windows device.
- Organize your music library.

When you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), there are a few other types of playlists available:

- *Favorite Songs playlist*: See [Mark items as favorites](#).
- *Playlists created by any Apple Music contributor*: See [Add music and listen offline](#).
- *Playlists created by other subscribers that you follow*: See [See what your friends are listening to](#).
- *Special playlists (like Replay)*: See [Discover your most-played music of the year](#).
- *Collaborative playlists*: See [Collaborate on a playlist](#) and [Join a collaborative playlist](#).

Changes you make to your music library (creating playlists, for example) are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to Settings  > Apps > Music, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your library the next time you [sync with your computer](#).

[Ask Siri](#) something like, "Add this song to my Workout playlist" while playing a song or album. [Learn how to use Siri](#).

## Create, edit, and delete music playlists on iPhone

You can create playlists to suit specific moods or to organize songs with a certain theme.

### Create playlists to organize your music

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. To create a new playlist, tap Library, tap Playlists, tap + at the top of the screen, then tap New Playlist.
3. Enter a playlist title.
4. To give your playlist cover art, tap , then take a photo, choose an image from your photo library, or choose a file on your device.

5. Tap ##SHOULD BE RED , then tap  Add Music.

You can search for music, select music from your library, or choose songs listed at the bottom of the screen.

6. Tap  to add music to the playlist.

**Tip:** To add songs to your library when you add them to a playlist, go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Music**, then turn on **Add Playlist Songs**.

## Add music to a playlist

After you create a playlist, you can add music to it in several ways.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Do one of the following:

- Touch and hold an album, playlist, song, or music video, tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.
- From the Now Playing screen, tap , tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

## Edit a playlist

You can rename playlists, change the artwork, add and remove songs, and more.

**Note:** The owner of a **collaborative playlist** can make any changes to the playlist. Other participants can only add, remove, or reorder songs in the playlist.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the playlist, tap , tap Edit, then do any of the following:

- *Rename the playlist:* Tap the current name, then enter a new name.
- *Edit cover art:* Select from a variety of Apple templates or tap ##SHOULD BE RED  to add your own.
- *Show (or hide) the playlist in your Apple Music profile:* Turn on (or off) the "Show in My Profile and in Search" option.
- *Add songs from your library:* Tap  at the bottom of the screen, navigate to any place in your library, then tap  next to the song.

You can also touch and hold an item (song, album, playlist, or music video), tap Add to a Playlist, then choose a playlist.

- *Add a Suggested Song:* Tap  at the bottom of the screen, scroll below the Library options, then tap  next to the song.

Suggested Songs also appears at the bottom of your playlist song list. To refresh the list of suggestions, tap .

- *Delete a song:* Tap the song, then tap  at the bottom of the screen. Deleting a song from a playlist doesn't delete it from your library.
- *Change the song order:* Drag  next to a song.

Changes you make to your music library are updated across all your devices when Sync Library is turned on (go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Music**, then turn on Sync Library). If you're not an Apple Music subscriber, the changes appear in your music library the next time you **sync with your computer**.

## Sort a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a playlist, then tap **Draft** at the top right of the screen.

3. Tap Sort By, then choose an option.

## Delete a playlist

If you delete a playlist, the songs in the playlist remain in your library and on your iPhone. If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist and you delete it, the collaboration ends and the playlist is removed from your library, but it remains in the participants' library.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the playlist, then tap Delete from Library.

You can also tap the playlist, tap **⋮**, then tap Delete from Library.

## Collaborate on playlists

### Collaborate on a playlist in Music on iPhone

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#), you can share a playlist and collaborate on it with others. Everyone can add, remove, and reorder music and react with emoji to songs in the [collaborative playlist](#).

*Note:* Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

#### Invite others to collaborate on a playlist

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a playlist, then tap **##SHOULD BE GRAY** .
3. To approve people before they can join, turn on Approve Collaborators.

If you don't turn on this option, anyone with the link can join the collaborative playlist.

4. Tap Start Collaborating, then choose a sharing method, such as AirDrop, Messages, or Mail, to send a link to the playlist.

The person who receives the link must tap **Join Playlist** to start collaborating.

If you're the owner and you turn on Approve Collaborators, notifications appear in the top-right corner when a new person requests to join the collaborative playlist.

#### Add more people to collaborate on a playlist

If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist, or the owner hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link to the playlist with more people.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap ##SHOULD BE GRAY , then do one of the following:

- *Add someone who is nearby:* Tap QR Code. Others can join the playlist by using the camera on their iPhone to scan the code displayed on your iPhone.
- *Add someone else:* Tap “generate a new link” (if necessary), tap Share Invite Link, then follow the steps to [invite others to collaborate on a playlist](#).

## Manage shared settings for a collaborative playlist

If you’re the owner, you can change access and permissions for individuals or for everyone after you’ve started collaborating on a playlist.



1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap ##SHOULD BE GRAY , then do any of the following:

- *Invite others:* See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist](#).

*Note:* If you didn’t turn on Approve Collaborators, anyone collaborating on the playlist can share the link to the collaborative playlist.

- *Approve people before they can join:* Turn on Approve Collaborators.
- *Accept request:* Tap  to allow the person to join the collaborative playlist.
- *Decline request:* Tap  if you don’t want the person to join the collaborative playlist.

## Stop collaborating on a playlist with one or more people

If you’re the owner, you can remove people from the playlist or stop collaborating on it altogether.

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap ##SHOULD BE GRAY , then do any of the following:

- *Remove one person:* Swipe left on the person’s name, then tap Remove.
- *Stop collaborating on a playlist:* Tap Stop.

## Remove yourself from a collaborative playlist

Draft

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.  
Draft
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, tap **##SHOULD BE GRAY** , then tap Leave.

## Join a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and someone invites you to collaborate on a playlist, you can join it and then add, remove, or reorder music in the [collaborative playlist](#) and react to songs with emoji.

*Note:* Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. On your iPhone, tap the link you received, then tap Join or Request to Join (if the owner of the collaborative playlist must approve you first).
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Add a song, change the order of songs, or remove an item:* See [Edit a playlist](#).
  - *React to a song with emoji:* See [Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist](#).
  - *Invite others with a link:* Tap Share Invite Link. See [Add more people to collaborate on a playlist](#).

*Note:* If you're the owner of a collaborative playlist, or the owner hasn't turned on Approve Collaborators, you can share the link.

## Add a reaction to a collaborative playlist in Music on iPhone

If you [subscribe to Apple Music](#) and you join a [collaborative playlist](#), you can react to songs in the playlist with emoji.

*Note:* Apple Music isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a collaborative playlist, then tap the [MiniPlayer](#) to open the Now Playing screen.

3. Tap , then choose a reaction (for example, a thumbs up emoji) or tap  to find a specific emoji.



## Organize playlists in folders in Music on iPhone

You can create folders for your playlists to keep them organized.

### Create a new playlist folder

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists.
3. Tap  at the top right, then tap New Folder.
4. Type a name for the folder, then tap Create.

To rename a folder, tap  at the top right, tap Rename, then type the new name.

### Add or remove items from a playlist folder

1. Go to the Music app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, then tap Playlists.
3. Touch and hold a playlist or folder, then tap "Move to."
4. Tap the folder, then tap Move.

If a playlist is already in a folder and you want to move it back to the main Playlists list, don't select a folder—just tap Move.

**Tip:** You can also drag a playlist or folder into another folder.

## News

## Get started with News on iPhone

The News app  collects all the stories you want to read—from your favorite sources—about the topics that interest you most. Apple News+ subscribers can also access features like Offline Mode, puzzles, and recipes.

Know all that's latest and greatest

Draft

# FPO

Browse stories—from breaking news to science to entertainment. Open the sidebar, choose a publication or topic, then tap an issue or story on the right. The more you read, the better Siri understands what's important to you and suggests stories you might like.

## Customize your feed

# FPO

When you find a channel or topic you like, you can follow it. Tap  next to it in the sidebar or search results. Channels and topics you follow appear in the Today feed. If there's a channel or topic that you *don't* want to see in your Today feed, touch and hold it, then choose Block Channel, Block Topic, or Stop Suggesting.

## Subscribe to Apple News+

# FPO

When you subscribe to Apple News+, you can download stories, magazine issues, recipes, puzzles, and audio stories, so you can read and play even when you don't have a Wi-Fi or cellular connection. When prompted, tap a subscription button, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Take a break to test your wits



Solve daily puzzles—such as crosswords, sudoku, Quartiles, and Emoji—exclusive to Apple News+ subscribers. Tap Puzzles in the sidebar, then follow the onscreen instructions. Some games include a tutorial—in Quartiles, for example, tap ⓘ, then tap How to Play.

## Cook up a feast



Apple News+ subscribers also have access to thousands of curated and personalized recipes. Tap Following at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then tap ⓘ in the top-right corner or Recipe Catalog at the top of the feed.

Want to learn more?

- [See news stories chosen just for you](#)
- [Subscribe to Apple News+](#)
- [Find puzzles](#)
- [Find recipes and food stories](#)
- [Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content](#)

Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

# Get News notifications and newsletters on iPhone

If you don't want to miss the important stories, you can use notifications and newsletters to stay on top of the latest news. Some channels you follow may send notifications, or you can choose to receive newsletters from Apple News editors in your email inbox.

*Note:* Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Get notifications

Some channels you follow may send notifications about important stories.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for your preferred channels.
4. Turn on notifications from Apple News, such as Apple News Top Stories, Apple News Spotlight, and more.

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can additionally receive notifications when new issues are available of publications you follow. You can also receive New Features & Tips notifications.

## Receive Apple News newsletters

You can choose to receive newsletters in your email inbox from Apple News editors. Newsletters feature top stories, personalized based on your interests. If you [subscribe to Apple News+](#), newsletters can also include new issues of your favorite magazines.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email.
3. Swipe to the bottom of the screen, then turn on Apple News Newsletters or tap Sign Up for Newsletters, then tap Sign Me Up.
4. In the U.S., several different newsletters may be available. To choose which ones you'd like to receive, do one of the following:
  - *Opt in:* Tap Sign Up.
  - *Opt out:* Tap Subscribed.

*Note:* To subscribe to the Sports newsletter, you must first allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app—see [Get started with My Sports](#).

To stop receiving newsletters, return to the Notifications & Email screen, then turn off Apple News Newsletters. In the U.S., tap Manage Newsletters, then unsubscribe from each newsletter you no longer want to receive.

*Note:* Personalized newsletters aren't available in all countries or regions.

Draft  
You can also opt in or out of the newsletter using Apple Account settings or on the Apple Account website. .

## Use News widgets on iPhone

You can easily see the day's top and trending stories from the News app, as well as stories about a topic of your choosing, just by tapping the Today or Topic widget.

### Access stories from News widgets

In the Today or Topic widget, tap a story headline to open the story in News.

See [Add, edit, and remove widgets](#).

## See news stories chosen just for you on iPhone

The Today feed in the News app presents top stories selected by Apple News editors, the best stories from the channels and topics you follow, and stories and issues from [Apple News+](#). The Today feed also includes stories suggested by Siri—trending stories that are popular with other News readers, [My Sports](#), and more. Depending on your location, the Today feed can also include Apple News Today audio briefings, [puzzles](#), and local news (with your local weather conditions).

*Note:* Apple News Today audio briefings, local news, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions.

### Access stories in the Today feed

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Open a story:* Tap the story.
  - *Read more stories within a group:* Tap the arrow at the bottom of the group.
  - *Play a video:* Tap  in the thumbnail.
  - *Get newer stories:* Pull down to refresh the Today feed with the latest stories.

### Follow, unfollow, block, and unblock channels and topics

You can influence what appears in the Today feed by following and blocking channels and topics.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Open a channel feed:* Touch and hold a story, tap the channel name, then tap Go to Channel. Or tap a story in the Today feed, then tap the channel name at the top of the story.
  - *Open a topic feed:* Tap the topic title—Movies or Travel, for example.

3. At the top of the feed, do any of the following:

- *Follow:* Tap .
- *Unfollow:* Tap , then tap Unfollow Channel or Unfollow Topic.
- *Block:* Tap , then tap Block Channel or Block Topic.
- *Unblock:* Tap , then tap Unblock Channel or Unblock Topic.

**Note:** When you browse Top Stories and other areas that feature stories curated by Apple News editors, stories from channels you blocked show a gray headline and a message indicating that you blocked the channel. To read a story from a blocked channel, tap it, then tap Read Story.

See the Apple Support article [Block and unlock channels and topics in Apple News](#).

## Manage your favorites

Favorites shows the channels and topics from your Following list that you like best (you can have only a limited number of Favorites). Adding channels and topics to your Favorites makes them easier to access.

**Note:** Only channels and topics that you currently follow can be added to your Favorites.

The first time you use the News app on your iPhone, you won't see any Favorites. You create your Favorites group by marking channels and topics as favorites. You can customize your list at any time.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Edit, then do any of the following:
  - *Add a channel or topic to your Favorites:* Tap  next to a channel or topic to mark it as a favorite, then tap Done.
  - *Remove a favorite:* Tap  next to a channel or topic you no longer want as a favorite, then tap Done.
  - *Reorder favorites:* Touch and hold , drag favorites to the order you prefer, then tap Done,

You can also swipe up to Favorites in the Today feed, tap , then tap Manage Favorites.

To remove the Favorites group from your Today feed, swipe up to Favorites, tap , then tap Block from Today. To unlock Favorites, tap Following, swipe up, tap Blocked Channels & Topics, tap  next to Favorites, then tap Unblock.

**Note:** If you tap Block from Today in the Today feed, your Favorites group still appears in your Following list.

## Stop suggesting specific channels and topic groups in the Today feed

Suggested channels and topic groups may appear in the Today feed, but you can stop these suggestions.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap  in a channel or topic group, then tap Stop Suggesting.

The channel or topic isn't blocked, but **News** stops displaying the story group in Today.

## Tell News what kind of stories you prefer

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Today.
3. Tap ... below a headline, then tap Suggest More or Suggest Less.

## See stories only from the channels you follow

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Turn on Restrict Stories in Today, then confirm your choice.

**Note:** Restricting stories significantly limits the variety of stories that appear in the Today feed and all other feeds. For example, if you restrict stories and follow only one entertainment-related channel, your Entertainment topic feed will contain stories only from that channel. When you restrict stories, you don't see Top Stories and Trending Stories.

# Read and share stories in News on iPhone

You can read and share News stories on iPhone.



**Note:** Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions.

## Read a story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap a story to read it. While viewing a story, you have these options:

- *Read the next story:* Swipe left.
- *Read the previous story:* Swipe right.
- *Return to the list of stories:* Swipe from the left edge or tap ⌂ at the top left of the screen.
- *Tell News what stories you prefer:* When viewing a story, tap ⓘ, then choose Suggest More or Suggest Less. Your feedback is taken into account for future recommendations.
- *Change the text size:* Tap ⓘ, tap Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. (Not available in all channels.)
- *Share a story:* Tap ⓘ, then choose a sharing option, such as Messages or Mail.
- *Report a concern:* If you believe that a story you're viewing is mislabeled, inappropriate, offensive, or doesn't display properly, tap ⓘ, tap Report a Concern, then choose a concern.

In Apple News+ issues in PDF format, the Suggest More, Suggest Less, Save Story, and Report a Concern options aren't available. See [Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues](#).

## Read stories shared with you

When a friend [shares stories with you using the Messages app](#), you can easily find them in the Shared with You section in Apple News. (Your friend must be in your contacts list in Contacts.)

1. Go to Settings ⓘ > Apps > Messages.
2. Tap Shared with You, then make sure News is turned on.
3. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
4. Tap Following.
5. Tap Shared with You, then do any of the following:
  - Tap a shared story to read it in News.
  - Tap the name of the person who shared a story to reply to them in the Messages app. You can also reply while reading the story—tap the name shown below the channel's logo.

## Follow your favorite teams with My Sports on iPhone

With My Sports, you can follow your favorite sports, teams, leagues, and athletes; receive stories from top sports publications, local newspapers, and more; access scores, schedules, and standings for the top professional and college leagues; and watch highlights.

## Set up iPhone to use My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must do the following:

- *Sign in to your Apple Account:* Go to Settings ⓘ, tap "Sign in to your iPhone," then enter your Apple Account information.

- *Sign in to the App Store:* Go to **Settings**  > [your name], then tap **Media & Purchases**.

## Get started with My Sports

Before you can use My Sports, you must allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app. When you allow syncing, teams you follow in News are followed automatically in the Apple TV app, and vice versa.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen, tap Get Started, then tap Pick Your Teams.
3. On the Manage My Sports screen, tap  next to sports, teams, leagues, and major sporting events to follow them.

Sports topics you've previously expressed interest in appear below Suggested.
4. To search for a sports topic, tap the search field, enter a search term such as a team's name or location, tap  next to a result, then tap Done.

After you allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app, you can sign up for the Sports newsletter for stories and team updates. See [Receive Apple News newsletters](#).

## View sports coverage

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports at the bottom of the screen to view comprehensive sports coverage.

*Note:* To see the most important sports coverage at a glance, tap Today, then swipe up to the Sports group.

You can also find the sports topics you follow in the Following tab below My Sports.

*Note:* To get notified about a team or league you follow, turn on [notifications](#) for Sports and allow syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app.

## Browse all available sports

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then tap All Sports at the top of the screen.
3. Tap a sport or league to go to its feed.
4. To follow that sport or league, tap  at the top of the screen.

## Manage sports topics

You can follow and unfollow sports topics after you've set up My Sports.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Sports, tap  at the top right, tap Manage My Sports, then do any of the following:

- *Follow topics:* Tap  next to each topic you want to follow, then tap Done.
- *Unfollow topics:* Tap  next to topics you want to unfollow, tap Unfollow, then tap Done.
- *Reorder topics:* Touch and hold , drag topics to the order you prefer, then tap Done.

## Show scores and schedules, highlights, and more

My Sports offers scores and schedules for your favorite teams, stats and stories for individual games and events, video highlights, and stories related to your favorite teams.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sports, then do any of the following:
  - *Show scores and schedules:* Swipe left on the scores at the top of the feed, then tap See More.
  - *Show stats and stories for individual games:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, or swipe down to a sports topics you follow, then tap a game.
  - *Watch a live game:* Tap a score at the top of the feed, then tap Open in Apple TV (before or after the game) or Watch on Apple TV (during a live game). Or swipe down to a topic you follow, tap the game's tile, then tap Open in Apple TV or Watch on Apple TV. If the game is available in your area and you've subscribed to a service that broadcasts the game, you can watch it in the Apple TV app or in a supported app.

*Note:* Supported sports apps may require a separate subscription. Not all games are available in all areas.

- *View highlights:* Swipe up to the Highlights section, then tap  in the thumbnail. Tap  to see more highlights.

*Note:* Highlights are available only for select leagues.

- *Read sports stories related to topics you follow:* Swipe up to For You, then tap a story.

## Stop syncing My Sports

You can stop syncing between Apple News and the Apple TV app.

*Note:* When you turn off Sync My Sports, you can no longer use My Sports.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Turn off Sync My Sports.

## Listen to Apple News Today on iPhone

You can listen to Apple News Today, an audio briefing of the day's top stories hosted by Apple News editors. [With an Apple News+ subscription](#), you can also listen to audio versions of select Apple News+ stories in the News app and in the [Podcasts app](#).

**Note:** Apple News, Apple News+, and the **Draft** audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Play Apple News Today

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap an episode of Apple News Today.

Apple News Today briefings also appear in the Today feed below Listen Now.

3. For more audio controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.

See [Listen to audio stories](#).

4. To return to the mini player, swipe down to minimize the full-screen player.

To close the full-screen player, tap , then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap .

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, a preview of an Apple News+ audio story plays when the briefing concludes.

## Get Apple News Today show notes notifications

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe to the bottom of the screen, then tap Notifications & Email below Manage.
3. Turn on notifications for Apple News Today.

## Apple News+

### Subscribe to Apple News+ on iPhone

When you subscribe to Apple News+, you can access current and back issues of hundreds of magazines and newspapers, directly in Apple News on your iPhone, along with recipes, puzzles, and audio stories. You can share issues with others or download them for offline reading. Learn more about subscriptions on the [Apple News+ website](#).

You can subscribe to Apple News+ or to Apple One Premier, which includes Apple News+ and other Apple services. See the Apple Support article [Bundle Apple subscriptions with Apple One](#).

**Note:** Apple News, Apple News+, Apple One, puzzles, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Subscribe to Apple News+

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap the subscription button shown in a magazine, puzzle, recipe, or story, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - Tap News+ at the bottom of the screen, then tap the subscription button.

### 3. Follow the onscreen instructions. Draft

You may be asked to sign in to your Apple Account.

## Share Apple News+ with family members

When you subscribe to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, you can [use Family Sharing](#) to share Apple News+ with up to five other family members. Your family group members don't need to do anything—Apple News+ is available to them the first time they open the News app after your subscription begins.

If you [join a family group](#) that subscribes to Apple News+ or Apple One Premier, and you already subscribe, your subscription isn't renewed on your next billing date; instead, you use the group's subscription. If you join a family group that doesn't subscribe, the group uses your subscription.

**Note:** To stop sharing Apple News+ with a family group, you can cancel the subscription, [leave a Family Sharing group](#), or [remove a member from a Family Sharing group](#).

## Cancel or change your Apple News+ subscription

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, swipe up, tap Subscriptions (below Manage), then do one of the following:
  - *Apple News+ only:* Tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *Apple News+ and individual channels:* Select Apple News+, tap Cancel Subscription, then follow the onscreen instructions.

**Tip:** You can [unfollow channels and topics](#) instead of unsubscribing.

If you subscribe to Apple News+ as part of an Apple One Premier subscription and want to cancel your subscription, see the Apple Support article [If you want to cancel a subscription from Apple](#).

## Browse and read Apple News+ stories and issues on iPhone

To get the most out of Apple News+, follow your favorite publications and browse through current and back issues.

**Note:** Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

## Browse Apple News+ issues and stories

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.

Stories and issues from Apple News+ appear in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, and channel feeds. Stories (but not issues) can also be found in topic feeds and search results.

2. To access entire issues, tap the News+ tab at the bottom of the screen, where you can do any of the following:

- View News+ content chosen just for you: Near the top of the screen, tap Best of News+.
- View all available publications: Near the top of the screen, swipe the options left, then tap Catalog.
- View a specific content category: Swipe left on the options near the top of the screen, tap Catalog, tap Featured, then tap a category such as Money & Business, Entertainment, or Sports.
- View new and recent issues: Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. By default, new issues appear near the top of the screen. The issue you've most recently read appears first. If you've recently downloaded an issue, it appears next. To choose a different sorting option, tap ☰, then tap Sort by Name or Sort by Date.

*Note:* If you block an Apple News+ publication, its issues are removed from My Magazines.

## Open a story or issue

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap an issue cover in News+ or the Today feed.
  - Tap Following, enter the name of the Apple News+ channel in the search field, tap the channel, then tap the issue.
  - Follow a link to a story or issue that someone shared with you.

## Follow and unfollow publications

You follow an Apple News+ publication by following its channel.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Today or News+ at the bottom of the screen, tap a story or issue from an Apple News+ publication, tap the publication's name at the top of the screen, then tap ☀.
  - Tap Following, enter the publication's name in the search field, then tap ☀.
  - Tap News+, swipe left on the categories near the top of the screen, tap Newspapers or Catalog, then tap Follow below the publication's cover.

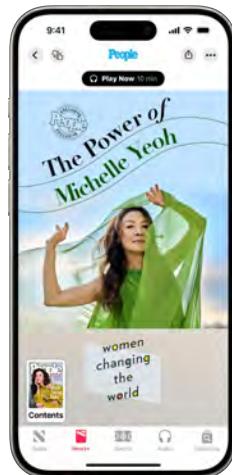
To unfollow a publication, tap Following, swipe left, then tap Unfollow.

## Access back issues

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap News+, tap My Magazines, tap ... below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Browse Back Catalog.
  - Tap a channel you follow, or search for a channel, then tap it. Below Recent Issues, swipe to the issue you want to read, then tap to open it. Tap Issues near the top of the screen to browse all available issues.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the issue, where you can do any of the following:
  - *View the table of contents:* Tap the cover thumbnail at the bottom left of the screen.
  - *Navigate to a story:* In an issue in Apple News Format, tap the story link in the table of contents. In a PDF issue, tap the thumbnail of the page you want to view.
  - *Page through an issue:* Swipe left to go to the next story, or swipe right to go to the previous story.
  - *Change the text size:* In stories in Apple News Format, tap  , choose Text Size, then tap the smaller or larger letter to change the text size in the story and all other stories in the channel. In PDF issues, pinch to zoom.

If you sign out in Settings  > [your name] > Media & Purchases, you can only access free stories—you must sign back in to access stories and download issues that require an Apple News+ subscription.



## Use Offline Mode to read downloaded News content on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers can automatically download News content, then access it when there's no Wi-Fi or cellular connection—for example, when taking a flight or riding the subway.

**Note:** Content that can be downloaded for Offline Mode may include stories, issues, audio stories, recipes, and puzzles. Not all content types are available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Turn on Automatic Downloads for Apple News+

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#).
2. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
3. Turn on Background App Refresh.

4. Tap Automatic Downloads, turn on **Allow Automatic Downloads**, then turn on any of the following:

- *Recent Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in the Today feed, Best of News+ feed, Sports feed, Shared with You, and History.
- *Saved Stories*: Downloads the latest stories in your Saved Stories list.
- *Magazine Issues*: Downloads the latest issues of magazines you follow.
- *Food & Recipes*: Downloads the Food feed, the Recipe Catalog, and [Saved Recipes](#).
- *Puzzles*: Downloads the Puzzles feed, the feed for each puzzle type, and the puzzles in these feeds.
- *Audio Stories*: Downloads audio stories in the Today feed and Audio tab.

**Note:** To download smaller versions of images in stories and recipes, turn on **Optimize Storage**.

Your iPhone downloads News content when it has sufficient storage space and is connected to Wi-Fi and power. If you have a cellular connection but not Wi-Fi, only Top Stories in the Today feed are downloaded automatically.

## Use News in Offline Mode

If you don't have a Wi-Fi or cellular connection, No Internet Connection appears at the top of the screen and any content in the app that isn't downloaded is dimmed. To switch from the currently loaded version of each feed to the downloaded version, tap **Show Stories Downloaded** for Offline Mode.

When you reconnect to the internet, tap **Check for New Stories** at the top of the screen. All feeds in the app are refreshed and display the latest content.

## Manually download Apple News+ issues on iPhone

With an [Apple News+ subscription](#), you can download issues to read when you're not connected to the internet.

**Note:** Apple News and Apple News+ aren't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of Apple Media Services](#).

### Download an Apple News+ issue

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - Tap Today, then swipe to My Magazines.
  - Tap News+, then tap My Magazines. You can also tap Catalog near the top of the screen, then tap a stack of magazines.
  - Tap Following, then tap a magazine channel you follow.
  - Tap Following, enter the magazine channel name in the search field, then tap the channel.

3. When you find the issue you want, <sup>Draft</sup> tap ... below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), then tap Download Issue.

To download multiple issues, tap My Magazines, tap ..., tap Select, tap the issues you want to download, then tap .

## Read a downloaded issue

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab.
3. Tap Downloaded near the top of the screen, then tap an issue.

## Remove issues

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the News+ tab, then tap Downloaded near the top of the screen.
3. Tap , tap Select, tap the issues you want to remove, then tap .

If you remove an issue from the Downloaded tab, its cover remains in My Magazines so you can easily access the issue again.

To remove all downloaded issues, tap Following > History, tap Clear, then tap Clear All.

## Remove an issue from My Magazines

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap My Magazines near the top of the screen.
3. Tap ... below the issue cover (or touch and hold the cover), tap Remove, then tap Remove from My Magazines.

The issue's cover and content are removed from iPhone and from any other devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#) and where News is turned on in iCloud settings.

# Listen to News stories in News on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can listen to audio versions of select News+ stories. You can also listen to select Apple News+ audio stories [in the Podcasts app](#).

*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and the audio feature aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## Browse audio stories

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap  to show Apple News+ audio stories and Apple News Today. If you're a subscriber, you have access to the following:

- *Editors' Picks*: Features audio stories chosen by the Apple News editors as well as the latest episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.
- *Up Next*: Stories you're currently listening to or have added to the Up Next queue.
- *For You*: Stories recommended to you based on your interests.
- *Story groups*: Dynamic collections of stories curated by the Apple News editors, based on a topic or theme, such as space exploration or stories to accompany your commute.
- *More to Explore*: Links to all audio stories, Apple News Today episodes, recently played stories, and story categories such as Arts & Entertainment, News & Politics, and Sports.

To learn more about a story before listening to it, tap See Details.

If you're not an Apple News+ subscriber, you can hear previews of audio stories in Editors' Picks, Audio Stories For You, and in story groups. You can also listen to full episodes of Apple News Today and Apple News In Conversation.

## Play audio stories

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap a story.
3. For more playback controls, tap the mini player at the bottom to open the full-screen player.

4. To return to the mini player, swipe Draft down to minimize the full-screen player.

To close the full-screen player, tap , then tap Close Audio Player. To close the mini player, tap .



Audio stories can also appear in a feed. To listen to the story, tap Play Now (Apple News+ subscription required). You can also tap the story to read it, then tap Play Now at the top of the story.

Use any of the following controls:

Control	Description
	Play
	Pause
	Next story
	Jump back 15 seconds
	Choose a faster or slower playback speed
	<a href="#">Stream audio to other devices</a>
	Choose more actions such as place a story next or last in the queue, read a story, or share it

## Add stories to Up Next

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - In the Audio tab or a news feed, tap , then choose Play Next or Play Last.
  - At the top of a story, touch and hold Play Now, then choose Play Next or Play Last.

To continue listening from your most recent reading or listening position, tap Play Next from  or Play Last from  Draft.

To reorder stories in the queue, tap **See All**, touch and hold **⋮**, then drag stories to the order you prefer.

## Read, share, and remove audio stories

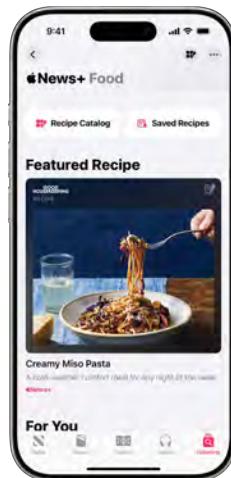
1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do any of the following:
  - *Read, save, share, and more:* Tap **⋮**, then choose an option.
  - *Remove stories from the Up Next queue or For You:* Touch and hold the story, then select Remove.

*Note:* Some of these options are also available when you swipe a story left or right.

When listening to a story, open the full-screen player, then tap **⋮** to see a list of similar options.

## Find recipes and food stories in Apple News+ on iPhone

If you [subscribe to Apple News+](#), you can find personalized food content, including a large catalog of recipes with features like interactive ingredient lists and easy-to-start timers.



*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and food features aren't available in all countries or regions.

## Browse stories and recipes

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **⋮** at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to see stories and recipes.

The more food content and recipes you read, the more personalized your recommendations become.

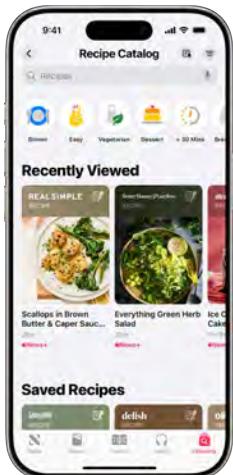
3. To navigate between recipes and stories, swipe left or right.

## Search for and filter recipes

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **⋮** at the bottom of the screen, then tap Food.

3. Tap Recipe Catalog at the top of the feed or  in the top-right corner, then do any of the following:

- *Search by recipe title, ingredient, or keyword:* Tap the search field, enter a term, then tap Search.
- *Filter by category:* Tap a category, such as Vegetarian.
- *Add and combine filters:* Tap , tap a filter, then tap Apply.
- *Remove a filter:* Tap .



## Save a recipe

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to browse recipes, or search for and filter recipes.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *While browsing or viewing search results:* Touch and hold the recipe's image, then tap Save Recipe.
  - *While a recipe is open:* Tap Save.
4. To revisit saved recipes, tap Saved Recipes in the Following list or the Food feed, or tap  in the Recipe Catalog.

To remove a recipe from your saved recipes, touch and hold the recipe, then tap Unsave Recipe.

**Tip:** To remember what to buy when you go shopping, tap , tap Add to Grocery List, then select the missing ingredients. Tap , choose which list you want the items added to, then tap .

## Prepare a recipe

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap  at the bottom of the screen, tap Food, then scroll down to browse recipes, or search for and filter recipes.
3. Tap a recipe to open it, or while reading a food story, tap Recipe in the bottom right.  
If the story has multiple recipes, tap Recipes, then tap the recipe you want to prepare.
4. Scroll to see the recipe's ingredients and directions, then tap Ingredients or Directions near the top of the screen to jump between them.

Draft

5. To focus on the directions, tap **Cook**<sup>Draft</sup>.

Steps appear in a larger font and the display stays on while you're preparing the recipe.

**Tip:** While viewing directions, you can tap an ingredient to see how much is used in the recipe, without going back to the ingredients list. While viewing ingredients, you can keep track of what you already prepared or used by tapping them.

## Use a cooking timer

You can start a cooking timer when a recipe recommends a length of time (highlighted in color)—for example, the time needed to sauté onions or let a cake rest.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Begin [preparing a recipe](#), as above.
3. When a time appears in a step, tap , swipe up or down to adjust the time, then tap Start.

## Access food content offline

You can make sure you can access the Food feed, Recipe Catalog, and Saved Recipes in [Offline Mode](#).

1. While you're online, go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, tap News, then tap Automatic Downloads (below News+ Offline Mode).
3. Turn on Food & Recipes.

# Puzzles

## Find puzzles in Apple News+ on iPhone

[Apple News+ subscribers](#) can access daily and archived [crossword](#), [crossword mini](#), [Quartiles](#), [Emoji Game](#), and [sudoku](#) puzzles. A few puzzles may be available without a subscription.

*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### View the Puzzles feed

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - Tap Following, then tap Puzzles.
  - Tap Today, scroll down, then tap the Puzzles group.

### Follow the feed for a puzzle type

If you want quick access to a specific type of puzzle (crossword, crossword mini, Quartiles, Emoji Game, or sudoku), you can follow that type.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the Puzzles feed.

3. Tap Crossword, Mini, Quartiles, Emoj<sup>Draft</sup> Game, or Sudoku.

4. Tap ☰, then tap Follow.

A Puzzles category appears in Following, with the puzzle types appearing below. To make them favorites, tap Edit, tap ☰ next to a puzzle type, then tap Done.

**Note:** If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can automatically download puzzles in the Puzzles feed and puzzle type feeds to play in **Offline Mode**.

## Choose a puzzle

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Go to one of the following areas to find a puzzle:

- The Today feed

- The Best of News+ feed

- The Puzzles feed

- The feed for a puzzle type (crossword, crossword mini, Quartiles, Emoj<sup>Draft</sup> Game, or sudoku)

3. Tap a puzzle to open it.

Crossword and sudoku puzzles have a difficulty rating—easy, moderate, or challenging.

You can also solve puzzles from the archive. See [View past puzzles](#), below.

## View past puzzles

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.

2. Open a puzzle feed, then swipe up to view the most recent puzzles in the archive.

3. Tap a puzzle below Archive to open it.

You can see more past puzzles in the complete puzzle archive. Tap > next to Archive. Or tap ☰, choose an archive, then tap to choose a puzzle.

**Tip:** To sort or filter a puzzle archive, tap ☰.

## See your puzzle scores, stats, and streaks in News on iPhone

If you subscribe to Apple News+, you can see your puzzle scores, stats, and streaks, share your scores, and compete against other players.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once; you can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

**Note:** Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

## View puzzle stats and streaks

In each puzzle feed you can find the Scoreboard. It includes:

- Statistics for each puzzle type—the number of puzzles solved, for example

- Your current streak—the number of consecutive days you've solved the daily puzzle

- Your longest streak

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Choose the feed for a puzzle type, then swipe up.

Conditions that affect stats include the following:

- If you use the Reveal command to show all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle won't count toward your stats, and completing the puzzle won't start or continue a streak.
- Puzzles you complete on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, count toward your stats. Any puzzles you played on older OS versions don't count toward your stats.
- After you open the News app on a device with iOS 17.5, iPadOS 17.5, macOS 14.5, or later, any daily puzzles you complete on a device with an earlier version of the OS are added to your streak. For example, if you complete Monday's crossword and Tuesday's crossword on your iPhone with iOS 17.5, and then solve Wednesday's crossword on your iPad with iPadOS 17.4, your streak is extended.
- Users in the continental U.S. and Canada must complete a puzzle within 24 hours of its publication for it to count toward a streak. Users in Alaska and Hawaii get an extra hour or two; they must complete the day's puzzle before midnight local time.
- To start or maintain a sudoku streak, solve at least one of the current day's sudoku puzzles of any difficulty level without revealing answers.

Your stats and streaks stay up to date on all your Apple devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). Go to [Settings](#)  > [your name] > iCloud > See All (in the Saved to iCloud section), then turn on News.

## Compete with others

You can compete against friends and other puzzle solvers in [Game Center](#).

1. Go to [Settings](#)  > Game Center.
2. Turn on Game Center, then [sign in to your Apple Account](#).
3. Go to [Settings](#) > Apps > News.
4. Turn on Game Center.

For Quartiles, your score is the number of points you earned. For Emoji Game, your score is how many moves you used to solve the puzzle.

## Share your score

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a puzzle.

- For crossword, crossword mini, sudoku: Tap , tap Share, then choose Messages, Mail, or another sharing option. Your score is the time it took you to solve the puzzle.
- Quartiles: Tap , then choose how you want to share your rank and how many points you earned with another Apple News+ subscriber.
- Emoji Game: Tap , then choose how you want to share how many moves you used to solve the puzzle.

Your answers aren't visible to others who open your shared score.

## Solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in News on iPhone

Apple News+ offers subscribers a new crossword and crossword mini puzzle every day. Crossword puzzles start out easy but get increasingly challenging as the week goes on. When you want a puzzle you can solve in next to no time, try an always-easy crossword mini puzzle.

You can navigate and solve crossword and crossword mini puzzles in multiple ways. For example, you can display puzzles in the traditional grid view, or instead choose to show clues and answers in a list. You can tap squares to select words, or hide the keyboard and choose clues from a list.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once; you can return at any time. The timer pauses while you're away.

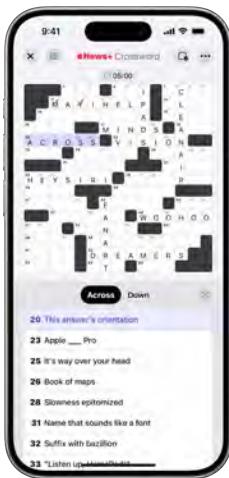
*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

### Solve in grid view

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap a square to show the clue below the puzzle, then use the keyboard to enter the answer. You move to other squares as you type. You can also tap < or > next to the clue to move to the previous or next clue.

With the keyboard showing, switch from across to down, or vice versa, by tapping the selected square again or tapping the clue.

To hide the keyboard and show a scrollable list of all the clues, tap . Tap a clue to show the keyboard and select the corresponding answer in the grid.



## Solve in list view

You can show clues and answers in a list rather than in the traditional grid.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Across or Down to switch to the crossing set of clues.

Tap  to return to grid view.



## Get hints and answers

If you're unsure of an answer you entered, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Mark incorrect answers:* Tap Autocheck, Check Square, Check Word, or Check Puzzle.
  - *Reveal answers:* Tap Reveal, then tap Square, Word, or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

*Note:* When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, it's not counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak.

Some puzzles have clues that reference other clues. You can highlight these connections. Tap , then turn on Highlight Linked Clues.

When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for that puzzle only. If you want Autocheck to stay on all the time, follow these steps:

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , choose Settings, then turn on Always Autocheck.
4. Tap , then choose Autocheck.

Autocheck stays on for all puzzles of that type until you turn it off.

## Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap .
4. Tap Clear Puzzle.

## Change how you move around the puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.
3. Tap , then change any of the following settings:
  - *Skip Filled Squares*: By default, after entering a letter, the next empty square in the puzzle is selected. Turn this setting off to select the square to the right or the square below, whether or not it's filled.
  - *At End of Word*: Choose Advance If Complete, Always Advance, or Don't Advance.



## Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a crossword or crossword mini puzzle.

- Tap ⓘ.
- Tap ⓘ, then tap Show Timer or Hide Timer.

## Solve Quartiles puzzles in News on iPhone

Apple News+ subscribers can solve Quartiles puzzles. Players select tiles containing two to four letters from a four-by-five grid to form words. You can use up to four tiles per word, and the more tiles you use, the more points you score.

A word formed from four tiles is called a Quartile and is worth 8 points. When you find all five Quartiles, you receive an additional 40 points.

The object of the game is to earn the 100 points necessary to reach the Expert rank. You can continue forming words and accumulating points even after you've reached Expert.

**Note:** Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



### Play Quartiles

1. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap tiles to create a word, then tap ⓘ to enter it.

For example, to score a single point, tap "pear," then tap ⓘ. To score 2 points, tap "ap," then "pear" to form the word, "appear." Go for 4 points by tapping "ap," "pear," then "ance." Complete the Quartile and score 8 points by spelling "disappearance."

Completed words appear in the Words Found box, and any Quartiles you find appear in groups of four tiles.

Not all possible words qualify in Quartiles puzzles. For example, obscure and technical terms, proper nouns, and profanity never appear in the word list.

- *Reorder your tiles:* After you tap the tiles to place them above the grid, you can touch and hold, then drag to reorder them.
- *See points needed to move to the next rank:* Tap Next Rank.
- *Clear tiles you don't want to use:* Tap ✖.
- *See how many words remain:* When you reach the Expert rank, the Words Found box shows how many words you haven't found.
- *See each word's points:* Tap ⓘ in the Words Found box.

**Tip:** Tap ⓘ, then tap How to Play to take a quick Quartiles tutorial, or tap More Puzzles to open the Quartiles puzzle feed.

### Shuffle or group tiles

1. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle and start finding words.
3. Quartiles you find are anchored to the bottom of the grid. If you'd rather anchor them to the top of the grid, tap ⓘ, then choose Sort Found Quartiles.
4. Tap ⓘ to shuffle tiles that aren't part of found Quartiles.
5. To shuffle all tiles in the grid, tap ⓘ to turn off anchoring, then tap ⓘ.

### Reveal all words

1. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open a Quartiles puzzle.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Reveal All Words. The words you didn't find are shown.
  - *If you reveal before you reach Expert rank:* The puzzle doesn't count in your Scoreboard stats and streaks.
  - *If you reveal after you reach Expert rank:* Your stats or streaks aren't affected.

## Play Emoji Game in News on iPhone

In iOS 18.4 and later, Apple News+ subscribers can solve daily puzzles in Emoji Game by completing words and phrases with images. Each emoji may be interpreted directly, through association, or in combination with other emoji.

The object of this logic and word game is to complete several phrases with as few moves as possible. When you attempt an answer or expand a clue, it counts as a move.

*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren't available in all countries or regions. Emoji Game puzzles are available in American English only on iPhone, iPad, and Mac in the U.S. and Canada. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

# FPO

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the Today feed, then open an Emoji puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:

- *Try an answer:* Consider the various definitions or associations for the emoji, then drag the most appropriate emoji (or group of emoji) to complete each word or phrase.

For example, a “pear” emoji  could complete “DISAP\_ \_ \_,” but interpreted as “fruit” it could complete “\_ \_ \_ \_ FLY.”

Letters relating to emoji may appear nonconsecutively in an answer. For example, dragging an “earth” emoji  to “L\_ \_ \_N \_ \_ E ROPES” completes the phrase “learn the ropes.”

- *Expand a clue:* Tap . This counts as a move.
- *Give up:* Tap , then tap Reveal. The answers you didn’t find are shown. When you reveal a puzzle, you break any existing streak. You can’t undo a reveal or try a revealed puzzle again.

**Tip:** Tap , then tap How to Play to take a quick Emoji Game tutorial, or choose More Puzzles to open the Emoji Game feed.

## Solve sudoku puzzles in News on iPhone

In sudoku puzzles, you place the numbers 1 to 9 into squares in a grid consisting of nine blocks with nine squares each, so that every number appears exactly once in each block, row, and column. Each sudoku grid comes with a few *givens*—squares already filled in.

Apple News+ offers subscribers new sudoku puzzles every day in three difficulties: easy, moderate, and challenging. Easy puzzles include more givens, while challenging puzzles require more complex strategies to narrow down options for each empty square.

*Note:* Apple News, Apple News+, and puzzles aren’t available in all countries or regions. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



## Solve a puzzle

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Enter a number:* With the Pen tab selected, tap a square, then tap a number key near the bottom of the screen.
  - *Delete an answer:* Tap a square where you entered a number, then tap .
  - *Step back through your actions:* Tap  to undo.
4. Continue entering numbers until every square is filled correctly.

**Tip:** Turn on Autocheck to indicate when you successfully complete a block, row, or column. To turn off the vibrations you feel when you fill all the squares in a block, row, or column, see [Change sounds and vibrations](#).

## Track possible answers

You can keep track of which numbers might work in each square by using notes within the puzzle.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Manually enter notes:* Tap a square, tap Notes, then tap numbers to add them to the square. Tap the number again to remove it.

When you enter an answer, any matching notes in that square's block, row, or column are removed. To turn this feature off, tap , tap Settings, then turn off Automatically Remove Notes.

  - *Automatically show notes:* Tap , then tap Autofill Notes. Notes representing possible numbers appear in empty squares, based on all filled squares at that moment—givens and your answers (even if incorrect). You can still add and delete notes manually. Using Autofill doesn't affect stats or streaks.
  - *Play with or without notes:* Tap , then tap Show Notes or Hide Notes.

When you think a number in your notes is the right answer, you can commit it by touching and holding the number on the onscreen keypad.

## Get help

If you're unsure of an answer, you can get a little help.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.

- *Highlight matching numbers:* Tap a number on the keypad, or tap any square with a number in it. (The square you select can be a given or one where you entered or revealed the answer.) Matching numbers are highlighted in answers and notes. To turn this feature on or off, tap ⓘ, tap Settings, then tap Highlight Matching Numbers.
- *Check for duplicated numbers:* Tap ⓘ, tap Settings, then turn on Show Conflicts. When you enter a number that already appears in a block, row, or column, the squares' bottom-right corners are marked with red triangles.
- *Mark incorrect answers as you enter them:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Autocheck. All incorrect answers you already entered have a red slash through them. As you enter additional numbers, the app checks whether or not they're correct.

When you turn on Autocheck inside a puzzle, it stays on for that puzzle only. To turn Autocheck on for all sudoku puzzles, tap ⓘ, tap Settings, turn on Always Autocheck, tap Done, tap ⓘ, then tap Autocheck (if it's not already on).

- *Check answers:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Check Square or Check Puzzle. A red slash indicates incorrect answers. Checking a square or puzzle doesn't affect stats or streaks.
- *Identify a solvable square:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Get Hint. The square having the most information available to deduce its answer is highlighted. Tap ⓘ to see the strategy and recommended actions, like obvious pairs and hidden triplets. Using hints doesn't affect stats or streaks.
- *Reveal answers:* Tap ⓘ, tap Reveal, then tap Square or Puzzle to display the correct answer.

*Note:* When you reveal all or a portion of a puzzle, the puzzle isn't counted toward stats in your Scoreboard or as part of a streak. To maintain a sudoku streak, solve at least one of the current day's sudoku puzzles of any difficulty level without revealing answers. Revealing also prevents you from undoing previous actions.

- *Review the sudoku tutorial:* Tap ⓘ, then tap How to Play.

## Restart your puzzle

If you'd like a fresh start, you can clear a puzzle's answers and reset the timer.

1. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Clear Puzzle.

## Show or hide the timer

You can show or hide the timer that appears above your puzzle.

1. Go to the News app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open a sudoku puzzle.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Tap ⓘ.
  - Tap ⓘ, tap Settings, then tap Show Timer or Hide Timer.

You don't have to solve puzzles all at once. Draft The timer pauses while you're away.

## Search for channels, topics, stories, or recipes in News on iPhone

The News app keeps track of a wide variety of channels, topics, stories, and recipes, which makes it easy to find content that interests you.

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, then tap the search field.
3. Enter any of the following:
  - The name of a channel, such as Scientific American or Washington Post
  - A topic, such as fashion, business, or politics
  - An event, such as an upcoming meteor shower
  - A [recipe](#) title, ingredient, or keyword

## Save stories in News on iPhone

You can save news stories to read later. Apple News+ subscribers can read saved stories in [Offline Mode](#).

### Save a story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. When reading a story, tap , then tap Save Story.

### Read a saved story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then tap the story.

### Delete a saved story

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Following, tap Saved Stories, then do one of the following:
  - *Delete one story:* Swipe the story left.
  - *Remove all saved stories:* Tap Clear.

## Clear your reading history in News on iPhone

In the News app, you can clear your reading history and adjust how you get reading recommendations.

### Clear your history

1. Go to the News app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Following, tap History, tap Clear, then do any of the following:

- *Remove your reading history:* Tap Clear History.
- *Remove information used to recommend stories:* Tap Clear Recommendations.

Choosing this option can change the types of channels, topics, and stories shown in the Today and other feeds in Apple News on all your Apple devices.

- *Remove your history, recommendations, and downloaded content:* Tap Clear All.

Your News history and recommendation information are removed from all devices where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#). Downloaded content is removed from this iPhone only.

When you clear your history, the identifier used by Apple News to report statistics to news publishers is also reset. You can reset the identifier at any time by going to Settings  > Apps > News, then turning on Reset Identifier.

### Recommend stories based on News app reading only

When you turn off Siri & Search for the News app, recommendations are based on your reading habits in the News app only, not in Safari and other apps.

1. Go to Settings  > Apps > News.
2. Tap Siri & Search, then turn off Show in App.

## How to subscribe to individual channels in News on iPhone

In addition to [subscribing to Apple News+](#), you can subscribe to individual publications from select publishers. There are three ways to access these subscriptions in News:

- *Subscribe within News:* You can purchase a subscription directly in News. In a channel that offers subscriptions, tap the subscription button.
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher's app:* If you downloaded a publisher's app from the App Store, and subscriptions you've bought as in-app purchases are also available in News, you're automatically granted access in News. See the Apple Support article [Buy additional app features with in-app purchases and subscriptions](#).
- *Access an existing subscription purchased from a publisher:* If you've purchased a subscription directly from a publisher's website or from the publisher's app on a non-Apple device, the publisher may allow you to sign in to your account in News to access your subscription there.

To sign in, tap a story that requires a subscription to read, then tap the "Already subscribed" link. Enter the user name and password for your existing subscription.

When you subscribe to a channel, you automatically follow it, and stories from the channel appear in the Today feed.

To cancel a subscription, tap the Following tab, swipe up, tap Subscriptions below the Manage heading, select the subscription, then tap Cancel Subscription.

# Notes

## Get started with Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to quickly capture your thoughts. You can add images and sketches, solve equations, make checklists, or even scan documents. And with iCloud, your notes stay up to date on all your devices wherever you go.

### Jot it down



Tap , then enter your text.

### Make quick notes anywhere



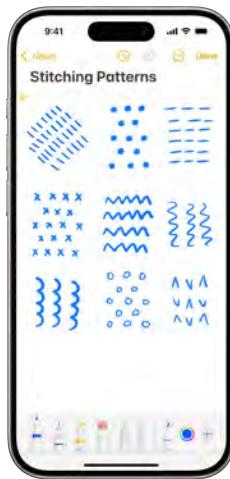
Use Quick Notes to jot down information from any app or screen. Tap , then tap New Quick Note. Add images, links, and more.

### Add almost anything



You can scan documents, record audio, take photos, and more. Tap ⓘ, then choose an option.

## Sketch your thoughts



Tap ⓘ, then draw or write with your finger. You can choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors and draw straight lines with the ruler.

## Invite others to collaborate



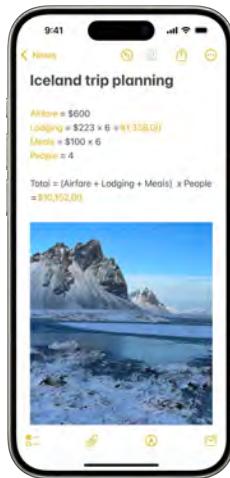
Tap ⓘ, then choose a sharing option. The people you share with can view or make changes to a note.

- [Create and format notes](#)
- [Add photos, video, and more](#)
- [Add drawings and handwriting](#)
- [Share and collaborate](#)

The availability of Notes features may vary depending on your language and country or region.

## Create and format notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to jot down quick thoughts or organize detailed information with checklists, images, web links, scanned documents, handwritten notes, and sketches. You can even organize your note with sections and headings.



### Create a new note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then enter your text.

The first line of the note becomes the note's title.

3. To save the note, tap .

### Add formatting, checklists, and tables

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. When writing a note, do any of the following:
  - *Format text:* Tap , then choose a style such as Heading, bold or italic font, highlight, and more. You can also swipe left over the options to quickly access additional formatting tools.
  - *Make a checklist:* Tap .
  - *Add a table:* Tap .

### Organize a note with sections and headings

You can collapse and expand sections, making it easy to manage and outline long notes.

# FPO

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, select the text for the heading.
3. Tap , then tap Heading or Subheading.
4. Add content to the section, then do any of the following:
  - *Collapse a section:* Tap .
  - *Expand a section:* Tap .

## Use Quick Notes on iPhone

You can use Quick Notes to jot down information over any app or screen on iPhone. Add links, images, tags, and mentions to a Quick Note so you can get to important names, numbers, and ideas easily. When you highlight text in Safari or add a link from an app, you see a Quick Note thumbnail next time you visit the site, taking you right to what you were viewing before.



You can access all your Quick Notes in the Notes app. And when you make a Quick Note on your iPhone, you can see the note on your iPad and Mac, too.

### Take a Quick Note

To make a Quick Note from any app, do any of the following:

- Tap , then tap Add to Quick Note. Tap Save.
- Add  to [Control Center](#), then tap  in Control Center.

### View and organize Quick Notes

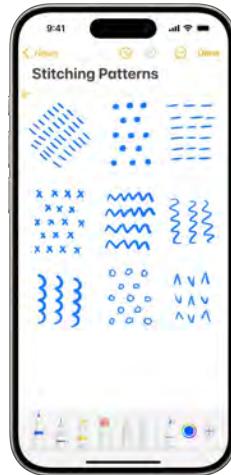
1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Quick Notes in the folders list. You may have to tap  to see your folders.

*Note:* You can't lock a Quick Note unless you move it to a different folder.

If you move an individual Quick Note to a **Draft** folder, it becomes a standard note and no longer appears as a Quick Note in other apps.

## Add drawings and handwriting in Notes on iPhone

Use the Notes app to draw a sketch or jot a handwritten note with your finger. Choose from a variety of Markup tools and colors, and draw straight lines with the ruler.



### Use drawing and handwriting tools

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap , then draw or write with your finger.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Change color or tools:* [Use the Markup tools](#).
  - *Adjust the handwriting area:* Drag the resize handle (on the left) up or down.

**Tip:** You can search handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)) in Notes. If the note doesn't have a title, the first line of handwritten text becomes the suggested title. To edit the title, scroll to the top of the note, then tap Edit.

### Select and edit drawings and handwriting

With Smart Selection, you can select drawings and handwriting. You can move, copy, or delete the selection within the note. You can even paste it as typed text in another note or app.

**Note:** Smart Selection and handwriting transcription work if the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings  > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.

2. In a note, select drawings and handwriting with your finger using any of the following methods:

- *With the Lasso tool:* Tap ⓘ, tap /, then use your finger to outline the objects you want to select.
- *With gestures:*
  - Touch and hold, then drag to expand the selection.
  - Double-tap to select a word.
  - Triple-tap to select a sentence.
  - Drag the handles to adjust the selection as needed.

3. Choose any of the following:

- Cut
- Copy
- Delete
- Duplicate
- Copy as Text
- Translate
- Insert Space Above

## Work with handwritten text

iPhone can straighten your handwriting and suggest spelling corrections.

1. Go to the Notes app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. In a note, [select the handwriting](#).
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Make your writing more level:* Tap Straighten.
  - *Correct spelling:* Tap an underlined word, then choose how you want to correct it. The fix appears in your own writing style.
  - *Move handwriting:* Touch and hold the selected text, then drag it to a new position.
4. To erase text, scratch out the writing, then hold down your finger on iPhone.  
(Supported when using a markup tool such as Pen, Mono line, or Marker.)

## Drag images from other apps

You can drag images from other apps to a note and combine them with handwritten and drawn content. After you add an image to the drawing area, you can reposition and resize the image.

# Enter formulas and equations in Notes on iPhone

With math in the Notes app, you can draw diagrams, solve equations, assign variables, and plot graphs. Mathematical expressions are solved inline when you write or type an equal sign.

**Draft**  
Note: The Notes app supports math written using Western Arabic numerals and common mathematical symbols, or typed using Arabic (Eastern & Western) and Devanagari numerals and common mathematical symbols.



## Add mathematical expressions to a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, or tap  to start a new note.
3. Do any of the following:
  - Type a math expression, then include an equal sign.
  - Tap , write a math expression horizontally, then include an equal sign.
  - Tap , write a stack of numbers, then draw a horizontal line below the numbers to add the numbers in the stack. Write a different symbol to the left of each digit if you want a different operation.
4. Tap the equal sign to see what Notes understood in what you wrote, then tap **Solve**. To correct mistakes, you can fix any of the following:
  - *Unrecognized math and unsolvable expressions*: Tap any dotted red lines to see details about the error.
  - *Ambiguous characters*: Tap any dotted blue lines to clarify what you wrote.

## Create a graph

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a note, or tap  to start a new note.
3. Type or write an equation with x and y variables, with the y variable on the left side of the equation. For example,  $y = 5x + 3$ .  
You can also tap the equal sign in an equation you already wrote.
4. When you finish the equation, a menu appears. Tap **Insert Graph**.

The y variable is represented on the vertical axis, and the x variable is represented on the horizontal axis.

To add another equation to the same graph, type or write a new equation, then tap **Add to Existing Graph**.

See also [Work with graphs in Math Notes](#).

## Access Math Notes created in the Calculator app

**Draft**

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the Folders list, tap Math Notes. You may have to tap < to see your folders.

See [Solve math with Math Notes in Calculator](#).

## Add photos, video, and more to notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add photos, videos, and information from other apps, such as maps, links, and documents.

### Add a photo or video

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap , then choose an option.

You can choose a photo or video from your photo library, or take a new photo or video.

**Tip:** To [draw on a photo](#), tap the photo, then tap .

To save photos and videos taken in Notes to the Photos app, go to **Settings**  > **Apps** > **Notes**, then turn on **Save to Photos**.

### Add info from another app to a note

You can add information from another app as an attachment to a note—for example, a location in Maps, a webpage in Safari, a PDF in Files, or a screenshot.

1. In the app you're using, open the item you want to share (for example, a map or webpage).
2. Tap the ...
3. Tap Share or , then tap Notes or New Quick Note.

### Change the preview size of attachments

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, you can change the preview size of the following:
  - *A single attachment:* Touch and hold the attachment, tap View As, then choose Small, Large, or Plain Link.
  - *All attachments in a note:* Tap ..., tap Attachment View, then choose Set All to Small or Set All to Large.

### View all attachments in Notes

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Above the notes list, tap ..., then tap View Attachments to see thumbnails of photos, links, documents, and other attachments. (Attachments in locked notes aren't shown.)
3. To go to a note with a specific attachment, touch and hold attachment thumbnail, then tap Show in Note.

## Record and transcribe audio in Notes on

In the Notes app, you can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed to text. You can search the transcript, add the text to the note, or copy the text to other documents.

*Note:* Audio transcription is available on iPhone 12 and later when the device language is set to English, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, French, German, Japanese, Korean, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese.

## Record live audio and see the transcript

You can record audio and have the spoken words transcribed in a note.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Record Audio.
3. To start the recording, tap .
4. When you're done, tap .
5. To see the transcript, tap .

*Note:* Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see , your iPhone either doesn't meet the minimum requirements or doesn't detect a supported language.

## Play an audio recording and review the transcript

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. View a note with an audio recording.
3. To play the audio recording, tap .
4. To review the transcript, tap the audio recording.

*Note:* Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see , your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

5. While viewing the transcript, you can do any of the following:
  - *Play the audio at a specific point:* Tap the text you want to hear.
  - *Search the transcript:* Tap , then tap Find in Transcript.
  - *Copy the transcript:* Tap , then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
  - *Save or delete the audio recording:* Tap , then choose an option.

*Note:* Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

## View transcripts of phone and FaceTime audio calls

You can record a call in the Phone or FaceTime app and view the spoken words transcribed in the Notes app (requires iOS 18.1 or later). See the following:

- [Record and transcribe a call](#)
- [Record and transcribe an audio call](#)

## Scan text and documents in Notes using the

# iPhone camera

In the Notes app, you can use the camera to scan text and documents.

## Scan text into a note

In [supported languages](#), you can insert scanned text using the camera.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Scan Text.
3. Position iPhone so that the text appears within the camera frame.
4. Drag or use grab points to select text, then tap Insert.

## Scan a document into a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In a note, tap , then tap Scan Documents.
3. Position iPhone so that the document page appears on the screen; iPhone automatically captures the page.



To manually capture the page, tap  or press a volume button. To turn the flash on or off, tap .

4. Scan additional pages, then tap Save when you're done.

The document is saved as a PDF in the note.

# Work with PDFs in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can attach, view, edit, and collaborate on PDFs, including documents you [scanned into a note](#). You can also annotate or sketch directly on PDFs and scanned documents in your note. You can even preview multiple PDFs in the same note.

## Attach a PDF to a note

To attach a PDF from an app such as Files or Mail, do any of the following:

- Drag the file into a note.
- Touch and hold the file, tap Share, tap Notes, then choose a note.

## View and edit a PDF in a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone Draft.
2. In the note with the PDF, tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Change the preview size:* Tap View As, then choose Small, Medium, or Large.
  - *View in full screen:* Tap Quick Look.
  - *Copy, share, rename, or delete the PDF:* Choose an action.
3. When using the Medium or Large preview size, you can also do any of the following:
  - *Show or hide thumbnails:* Tap .
  - *Zoom in and see more:* Pinch the screen or swipe right to see more pages.
  - *Edit a page:* Tap the thumbnail for the page, tap , then choose an action such as Rotate Left, Rotate Right, Filters, Crop Page, or Insert Blank Page. (Filters and Crop Page are supported only in scanned documents.)

## Search in PDFs

See [Search through your notes](#).

## Annotate a PDF in a note

- *Small preview size:* Tap the PDF to open it, then tap .
- *Medium and large preview sizes:* Tap .

See [Write and draw in documents with Markup](#).

## Collaborate with others

Get real-time updates when you [collaborate on a note](#) with other people. As you mark up a document, draw a diagram, or add a sticker, the people you share with can see the changes on their devices.

# Add links in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can add links to webpages. You can also link to related notes, like a trip itinerary and a list of recommended restaurants. When you add street and email addresses, phone numbers, and dates, they automatically become underlined text that you can tap to take action on.

## Link to a webpage

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to insert a link, do either of the following:
  - Select the text, tap , then tap Add Link. Enter the URL to specify the link destination. Tap .
  - Tap to place the insertion point, tap , then Add Link. Enter the URL and the name (optional). Tap .

## Link to another note using the title

You can create a link to another note using the title of the target note. If the title of the target note changes, the link text updates to the new title.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone Draft.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, type ">>", then enter the title of the target note.
3. Choose an existing note or create a new note.

To edit or remove the link, touch and hold the link, then choose an action.

## Link to another note using custom link text

Instead of using the title of the target note, you can use custom link text. If the title of the target note changes, the link text doesn't change.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the note where you want to add a link, select the link text, then tap Add Link.
3. Enter the title of the target note, then choose a note.

## Take action on addresses, phone numbers, dates, and more

In your notes, an underline appears below text that's recognized as a street or email address, phone number, date, or other data. Tap the underlined text to take action on it. For example, you can see a street address in Maps, compose an email, call a phone number, add a calendar event, or convert units and currency.

*Note:* Data detection is available when the system language of your iPhone is set to a supported language in Settings  > General > Language & Region > iPhone Language. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

# Search through your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can search through all your notes for typed and handwritten text, objects in images, and text in scanned documents. You can also search for text within a note.

## Search for text, objects, and more in all your notes

You can search for tags, typed and handwritten text (in [supported languages](#)), objects that appear in images, and text in scanned documents.

*Note:* If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the search field, then enter what you're looking for. You can also choose a suggested search, such as "Notes with Drawings," then enter additional text to refine your search.

If a note is locked, only its title appears in the search results. The search includes handwritten text (in supported languages), photos, and scanned documents.

## Search within a note or attachment for typed and handwritten text

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to search.
3. Tap , then tap Find in Note.
4. Tap , then select any of the options. To search PDFs and other attachments, select Include Attachments. Draft

5. Enter the text you're looking for in the search field.

## Organize your notes in folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can organize your notes into folders and pin the important notes to the top of the notes list.

### Create, rename, move, or delete folders

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the folders list, do any of the following:
  - *Create a folder:* Tap , choose an account (if you have more than one), tap New Folder, then enter a name.
  - *Create a subfolder:* Touch and hold a folder, then drag it onto another folder.
  - *Rename a folder:* Touch and hold a folder, tap Rename, then enter a new name.
  - *Move a folder:* Touch and hold the folder, then drag it to a new location. The folder becomes a subfolder if you drag it onto another folder.
  - *Delete a folder:* Swipe left on the folder, then tap . Or touch and hold the folder, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the notes.

### Pin notes

To pin an important note to the top of the notes list, do the following:

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, touch and hold the note, then tap Pin Note. Or swipe right on the note, then tap the pin.

### Sort and change the folder view

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, tap , then do any of the following:
  - *Change the folder view:* Choose View as Gallery or View as List.
  - *Sort the notes by title:* Tap Sort By, then choose Title.
  - *Sort the notes by date:* Tap Sort By, then choose Date Edited or Date Created.

By default, the notes are grouped by date. To turn this off, tap , then tap Group By Date.

- *Reverse the sort order:* Tap Sort By, then choose Oldest First (when sorting by date) or Descending (when sorting by title).

To choose a default sorting method for all your folders, go to  > Apps > Notes, then tap Sort Notes By.

### Move a note to another folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone. Draft
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, tap Move, then choose a folder.

## Delete a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. In the notes list, swipe left on the note, then tap . Or touch and hold the note, then tap Delete.

If you change your mind, open the Recently Deleted folder to recover the note.

# Organize your notes with tags on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can use tags as a fast and flexible way to categorize and organize your notes. You can add one or more tags to a note, such as #shopping and #work, and easily search and filter your notes across folders using the Tag Browser or Smart Folders.

## Add tags to notes

When you create or edit a note, type # followed by the tag name or choose a tag from the menu above the keyboard. A tag can only be one word, but you can use dashes and underscores to combine words. You can add multiple tags to a note.

**Tip:** You can use your finger to write a tag in a note. Tap the underlined tag, then tap "Convert to tag."

## View notes with tags

Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, do any of the following:

- *View all notes with tags:* Tap All Tags.
- *View notes with specific tags:* Tap one or more tags; to exclude a tag, tap the tag until the name has a line through it. Then choose to view notes matching any or all of the selected tags.

## Rename or delete a tag

Do any of the following:

- Below Tags at the bottom of the screen, touch and hold a tag, then tap Rename Tag or Delete Tag.
- Tap Edit (at the top of the folders list), scroll down to the tags, then tap a tag to rename it or tap .

When you delete a tag, it's also removed from all Smart Folders that use it.

# Organize your notes with Smart Folders on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can easily search and filter your notes across folders using Smart Folders.

## Create a Smart Folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone. Draft

2. Tap  choose an account (if you Draft have more than one), enter a name, then tap Make Into Smart Folder.
3. Choose one or more filters, then choose to include notes matching any or all of the selected filters. You can filter by tags, dates, mentions, and more.

You can also create a Smart Folder when viewing a list of tagged notes; tap , then tap Create Smart Folder.

## Convert a folder to a Smart Folder

When viewing the folder you want to convert, tap , scroll to the bottom, then tap Convert to Smart Folder.

When you convert a folder, its notes are moved to the Notes folder and tagged with the name of the Smart Folder.

**Note:** You can't convert a shared folder, a folder with a subfolder, or a folder that contains locked notes.

## Edit a Smart Folder

Do either of the following:

- In the folders list, tap Edit, then tap  to add, move, and rename folders.
- Touch and hold a Smart Folder, then tap Edit Smart Folder. You can change the name or filters.

# Share notes and collaborate on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can send a copy of a note to a friend. You can also invite people to collaborate in real time on a note or on a folder of notes in iCloud, and everyone will see the latest changes.



## Share a copy of a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to share.
3. Tap , choose Send Copy, then choose how to send your note.

## Collaborate on a note or folder of notes using iCloud

To collaborate with others, you can share a note or a folder of notes in iCloud. You can set permissions for the participants (such as allowing them to edit notes, add attachments, and create subfolders), and all the participants can see everyone's changes in real time. The participants must be [signed in to their Apple Account](#) and [have Notes turned on in iCloud settings](#).

**Note:** You can't collaborate on a locked note or on a folder with locked notes.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Do one of the following:
  - *Share a note:* Open the note you want to share, tap , then choose Collaborate.
  - *Share a folder:* Open the folder you want to share, then tap .
3. To change the access and permissions, tap "Only invited people can edit," then set any of the following:
  - *Who can access:* Choose Only invited people or Anyone with the link.
  - *Permissions:* Choose Can make changes or View only.
  - *Allow other to invite:* Turn on to allow participants to invite new people (available only when they have permission to make changes).
4. Choose Messages or Mail to send your invitation. (AirDrop isn't supported for collaboration.)

If you send the invitation in Messages, you [get activity updates in the Messages conversation](#) when someone makes changes in the shared note. Tap the updates to go to the shared note.

See the Apple Support article [If you can't share or collaborate in the Notes app on your iPhone or iPad](#).

## View activity in a note

In the notes list, an orange dot to the left of a note title indicates the note has changed since you last looked at it.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then swipe right on the note or swipe up on the Activity card to see who made changes and when.
3. To adjust how the activity is shown, tap , then choose any of the following:
  - *Show Updates:* Shows changes made since you last opened the note.
  - *Show All Activity:* Shows all activity in the note.
  - *Show Highlights:* Shows names, dates, and changes made by each participant.

**Tip:** To mention a participant and notify them of important updates, type an @ sign followed by their name.

## View activity in a folder

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Touch and hold the folder, then tap Show Folder Activity.

## Change sharing settings

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.

2. The owner of a shared note or folder can change the sharing settings by doing one of the following:

- *Manage a shared note:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Manage Shared Note.
- *Manage a shared folder:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Manage Shared Folder.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Remove participants:* Tap the participant you want to remove, then tap Remove Access.
- *Change access and permission settings:* To change the settings for all participants, tap Share Options. To change the settings for one person, tap their name.
- *Stop sharing:* When you choose this option, the shared note or folder is deleted from the devices of the other participants.

## Export or print notes on iPhone

In the Notes app, you can open a note in the Pages app and continue working. You can also export the note as a PDF or print the note.

### Open a note in Pages

1. Make sure your iPhone has the latest version of [Pages](#).
2. Go to the Notes app ⓘ on your iPhone.
3. Open the note you want to export.
4. Tap ⓘ, then tap Open in Pages.

*Note:* If the note is locked, you must unlock it before exporting the contents of the note to Pages. You can't edit drawings in Pages. Content such as scanned documents and PDFs appear as thumbnail images in Pages. Tags, mentions, checklists, and links to notes aren't active items in Pages. If a note is shared, the resulting Pages document isn't shared.

### Export a note as a PDF

You can create a PDF of a note, using the note's current view settings for its attachments. In a note with a multipage PDF or scanned document, the exported PDF contains only the first page of the original PDF or scanned document.

1. Go to the Notes app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to export.
3. Tap ⓘ, then tap Markup.
4. Mark up the pages in the exported PDF as needed, then tap Done to save the PDF.

### Export a note as Markdown file

You can export your notes as Markdown file to easily share your content with others, publish to websites or blogs, or integrate your notes into other apps and workflows that support Markdown.

1. Go to the Notes app ⓘ on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to export.

3. Tap , tap Export as Markup, then Draft choose how to send or save your note.

## Print a note

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the note you want to print.
3. Tap , then tap Print.
4. Choose the printer and other options, then tap Print.

# Lock your notes on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can lock notes to protect your sensitive information. You can access your locked notes using your device passcode or a custom password. If you have multiple Notes accounts, you choose the locking method for each account (for example, for your iCloud account).

## Lock notes with your device passcode

If you use your device passcode to access locked notes, you don't have to create and remember a separate password, which reduces the chance of losing access to your locked notes. If you use your device passcode, you can also use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes.

If you have multiple devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account, you use each device's passcode (or login password for a Mac) to access your locked notes on that device.

To access notes locked with a device passcode, you must be using iOS 16, iPadOS 16, macOS 13, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't be able to access the locked notes.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Password.
4. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.
5. Tap Use Device Passcode.
6. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.

## Lock notes with a custom password

Creating a custom password for locked notes can provide additional security, but if you forget the password, you may lose access to your locked notes.

You use your custom password to access your locked notes on all devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account. If you have more than one iCloud account or an "On My iPhone" account, you can set a different custom password for each account.

To access notes locked with a custom password, you must be using iOS 9.3, iPadOS 13, OS X 10.11.4, or later. On devices with an earlier version of the OS, you won't see the notes.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.

3. Tap Password.	Draft
4. If you have multiple accounts, choose the account you want to set a password for.	
5. Tap Use Custom Password.	
6. For added convenience, you can also turn on Face ID or Touch ID.	

Don't rely on Face ID or Touch ID as the only means of unlocking your notes. If you update your Face ID or Touch ID settings, or want to change your Notes password, you have to reenter your Notes password.

**Important:** If you forget your custom password, and you can't use Face ID or Touch ID to access your locked notes, Apple can't help you regain access to those notes.

You can reset your custom password, but this doesn't give you access to previously locked notes. The new custom password applies to all notes you lock from now on. Go to Settings > Apps > Notes, then tap Password > Reset Password.

See the Apple Support article [How to lock or unlock notes on your iPhone or iPad](#).

## Change the locking method

If you're using a custom password, you can switch to using your device passcode. When you change your locking method, notes that you accessed with the previous method begin using the new method.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Password, choose an account (if you have more than one), then tap Use Device Passcode.

## Lock a note

You can only lock notes on your device and notes in iCloud. You can't lock notes that have PDF, audio, video, Keynote, Pages, or Numbers attachments; notes that sync with other accounts; or Quick Notes. You can't lock a note that's shared in iCloud.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Open the note, then tap .
3. Tap Lock.

When a note is locked, the title remains visible in the notes list.

To remove a lock from a note, tap , then tap Remove.

## Open your locked notes

Opening one locked note opens all your locked notes in the same account for several minutes so you can easily jump into another note or copy and paste information from other apps.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap the locked note, then tap View Note.
3. To open the note, use Face ID, Touch ID, your device passcode, or your Notes password.

To lock your notes again, do any of the following:

Draft

- Tap the lock icon at the top of the Draft screen.
- Tap Lock Now at the bottom of the notes list.
- Close the Notes app.
- Lock your iPhone.

## Add or remove accounts in Notes on iPhone

In the Notes app , you can use multiple accounts—such as iCloud, enterprise-managed iCloud, Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo—and keep all your notes in one place. Your notes stay up to date on all your devices that use the same accounts. You can also have an On My iPhone account for notes you keep only on this device.

*Note:* All Notes features described in this guide are available when you use iCloud and the On My iPhone account. Some features aren't available when using other accounts.

### Keep your notes up to date on all your devices with iCloud

Your iCloud notes—and any changes you make to them—appear on your iPhone, iPad, and Mac where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap iCloud.
3. Turn on Notes.

### Add other accounts

You can use the Notes app to manage your notes in other accounts, such as Microsoft Exchange, Google, and Yahoo.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap Add Account.
4. Do one of the following:
  - Choose an account provider, then enter your account information.
  - If your account provider isn't listed, tap Other, tap Add Mail Account, enter your email account information, then turn on Notes for that account.

### Set up an On My iPhone account

Notes in this account appear only on your iPhone, and they're included in your iPhone backups to iCloud.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Turn on "On My iPhone" Account.

### Remove an account

When you remove or delete an account, Draft the notes in that account no longer appear on your iPhone. The notes remain in your internet account (for example, iCloud.com or Google) and any other devices you had already set up.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.
3. Tap Notes Accounts, then tap the account you want to remove.
4. Do one of the following:
  - *Stop using Notes on the account:* Turn off Notes.  
You can continue to use the account for other services, such as Mail.
  - *Stop using all services on the account:* Tap Sign Out (for an iCloud account) or Delete Account (for other accounts).  
If you don't see Sign Out or Delete Account, your account may be managed by your organization. See an administrator for removal instructions.

## Change the Notes view on iPhone

You can change how your notes appear in the Notes app . Add lines or grids to your notes, view your notes as a list or a gallery, and see all the attachments in one place.

### Show lines or grids in notes

- *In an existing note:* Tap , then tap Lines & Grids, then choose a style.
- *In all new notes:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Notes, then tap Lines & Grids.

### View notes as a list or gallery

When viewing a folder of notes, tap , then tap View as List or View as Gallery.

### View all attachments

When viewing a folder of notes, tap , then tap View Attachments.

## Change your Notes settings on iPhone

In Settings, you can customize your preferences for the Notes app . Choose the default account for new notes, set a password, and more.

### Customize your Notes settings

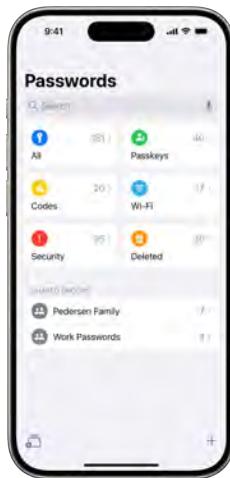
1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Notes.

- *Accounts*: [Add or remove accounts in Notes](#).
- *Siri*: Allow [Siri](#) to make suggestions across apps based on the way you use Notes.
- *Search*: Allow suggestions and content from Notes to appear in [Search](#) and [widgets](#).
- *Default Account*: Choose the [default account](#) when creating notes using Siri and the Notes widget.
- *Password*: [Lock important notes](#).
- *“On My iPhone” Account*: Turn on the [On My iPhone account](#).
- *Mention Notifications*: Receive notifications when your name is mentioned in [shared notes](#).
- *Language*: Choose your preferred languages (option appears when [multiple languages](#) are added).
- *Viewing*: Choose [viewing options](#) such as the sort order, lines and grids, and group notes by date.
- *App Links*: Get suggested app links.
- *Auto Convert to Tag*: Automatically change #text to a [tag](#) when typing a space.
- *Save to Photos*: Save [photos and videos](#) taken in Notes to the Photos app.
- *Access Notes from Lock Screen*: Choose Always Create New Note or Resume Last Note. Or turn it off to prevent access from the Lock Screen.

## Passwords

### Use passwords on iPhone

In the Passwords app , you can find all your passwords, passkeys, and verification codes in one place. You can use them on all your devices where you sign in to the same [Apple Account](#) and turn on Passwords & Keychain in iCloud settings. And if you use AutoFill to sign in to websites and apps, your passwords automatically appear in Passwords.



See all your types of password credentials:

- App passwords
- Website passwords
- Sign in with Apple
- Passkeys
- Verification codes
- Wi-Fi passwords
- Passwords shared with groups

Find a password by sorting or searching. Then tap Edit to reveal the password, or to change or delete the password.

**Tip:** In Passwords, tap Security for recommendations to [change weak passwords](#).

## Find your password for a website or app on iPhone

You can find your password for a website or app by searching or sorting your accounts on iPhone.

### Find your password for a website or app by searching for the account

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Enter the name of the account in the search field at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the account, then tap the Password field.

### Find your password for a website or app by sorting your accounts

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.



3. Tap  in the lower-left corner, then tap how you want to sort your accounts.
4. Locate and tap the account, then tap the Password field.

## Change the password for a website or app on iPhone

You can change the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.



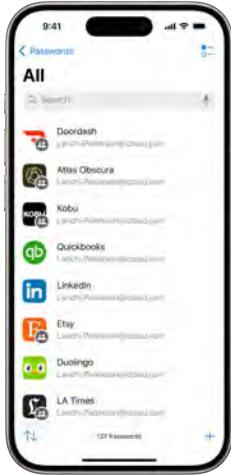
1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then locate the account for the website or app.
3. Tap the account.
4. Tap Edit, tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of that feature. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

**Note:** If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

# Remove a password from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

You can delete the password you use to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone.



1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account for the password you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete, then tap Delete Password to confirm.

*Note:* This action doesn't remove the password from the website or app where you created it.

## Recover a password you deleted from your iPhone

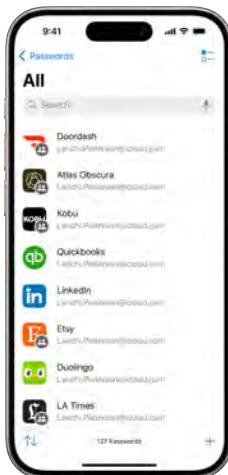
If you delete a password from your iPhone, you have 30 days to recover the password before it's permanently deleted.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Deleted.
3. Locate the account for the deleted password, then tap the account.
4. Tap Recover.

The password is returned to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

## Create a password for a website or app on iPhone

Your iPhone can generate a password to use on a website or app.



1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.
3. Tap + in the lower-right corner.
4. Enter details about the website or app, and a user name for your account.
5. Tap password.

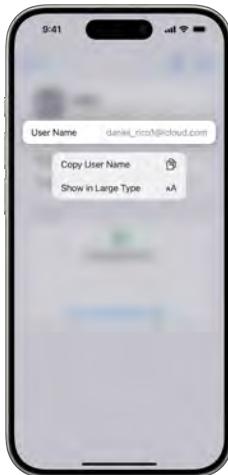
A strong password is suggested for you.

6. Tap the suggested password (or enter one).
7. Tap .

You can also create a password when you sign up for services on websites and in apps. See [Create a strong password for a new account](#)

## Show user names and passwords in large text on iPhone

You can show user names, passwords, and verification codes in large text on your iPhone.



1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Touch and hold your user name, password, or verification code, then tap Show in Large Type.

# Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps on iPhone

You can create and save passkeys to replace the passwords you use to sign in to supported websites and apps on your iPhone.

Passkeys are more secure than passwords, because they're uniquely generated for every account by your own device and are less vulnerable to phishing. And they work on all your devices where you're signed in to the same Apple Account.

Also, websites and apps can automatically create passkeys for your account, so you can use the passkeys the next time you sign in.

Like passwords, passkeys are encrypted and stored in your iCloud Keychain, where they aren't visible to anyone (including Apple).

**Note:** To use passkeys, [iCloud Keychain](#) and [two-factor authentication](#) must be turned on.

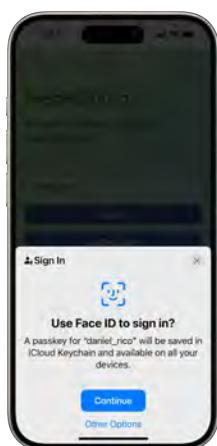
## Create and save a passkey using your iPhone

You can create and save passkeys for websites and apps that support them.

**Note:** The instructions for creating and saving a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to the sign-in screen for a supported website or app on your iPhone, and do one of the following:
  - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then follow the onscreen instructions.
  - *If you already have an existing account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.
2. When you see the option to save a passkey for the account, tap Continue.

Your passkey is saved.



**Note:** If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

The passkeys you create are stored on your iPhone in the Passwords app.

You can have a passkey and password for the same website or app, and find them both under the same account in the Passwords app.

Draft  
You can also save a passkey to a hardware security key. Tap "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (if available), then follow the onscreen instructions for saving a passkey. See [Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account](#).

## Use a passkey to sign in to a website or app on your iPhone

After you create and save a passkey for a website or app, you can use the passkey whenever you sign in.

**Note:** The instructions for signing in with a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. Go to a website or app on your iPhone, and tap the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Tap the suggested account name that appears at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard. If the account name doesn't appear, or you want to use a different one, enter it.
3. Use Face ID or Touch ID to complete sign in. If you didn't set up Face ID or Touch ID on your iPhone, enter your device passcode (the code you use to unlock your iPhone).

The passkey you saved completes the sign-in automatically.

## Use a passkey saved on your iPhone to sign in on another device

If you're using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and you have your iPhone with you, you can sign in to websites or apps on that device using the passkeys you created for them.

**Note:** The instructions for using a passkey on another device can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the website or app and enter your user name in the account name field on the sign-in screen.
2. Select "Other options," "Passkey from nearby device," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
3. Use your iPhone camera to [scan the QR code](#).

The passkey that's saved to iCloud Keychain completes the sign-in automatically.

## Create a passkey on a device that's not your own

If you have your iPhone with you, you can create a passkey while using a device not associated with your Apple Account (such as a computer at a public library, an internet cafe, or a friend's house) and save it to iCloud Keychain instead of to the device you're using to create the passkey.

**Note:** The instructions for creating a passkey can vary depending on the app, website, or browser, but they typically consist of steps similar to the ones below.

1. On the other device, go to the sign-in page for a supported website or app, then do one of the following:
  - *If you're setting up a new account:* Tap the button or link for setting up new accounts, then enter a new username.
  - *If you already have an account:* Sign in with your account name and password, then go to the account settings or management screen.

2. When you see the option to save a ~~passkey~~ for the account, select "Other options," "Save on another device," or similar (instead of Continue).

*Note:* If you don't see a passkey option, it means the website or app doesn't currently support passkeys.

3. Select "Save a passkey on a device with a camera," or similar, then follow the onscreen instructions to display a QR code on the screen.
4. Use your iPhone camera to [scan the QR code](#).

The passkey is saved to your iPhone and iCloud Keychain.

## Change a passkey

You might need to create a new passkey to replace the existing one (if, for example, you previously shared it with someone to whom you no longer want to give access).

To change a passkey, follow the steps for an existing account in [Create and save a passkey](#) or [Create a passkey on a device that's not your own](#).

## Delete a passkey

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Passkeys, then tap the account for the passkey you want to delete.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Passkey, then tap Delete Passkey again to confirm.

If you delete a passkey, you can create a new one at any time.

# Sign in with Apple on iPhone

With Sign in with Apple, you can sign in to participating websites and apps with your [Apple Account](#). You don't need to create and remember new passwords, and your account is protected with two-factor authentication. You can share your Sign in with Apple access with family and trusted contacts.

Sign in with Apple is designed to respect your privacy. Websites and apps can ask only for your name and email address to set up your account, and Apple won't track you as you use them.

Sign in with Apple requires [two-factor authentication](#) for your Apple Account. This protects your Apple Account, your app accounts, and your app content.

## Set up or upgrade an account to Sign in with Apple

When a participating website or app asks you to set up or upgrade an account, do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Some websites and apps don't request your name and email address. In this case, you simply authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

Others may ask for your name and email address to set up a personalized account. When an app asks for this information, Sign in with Apple displays your name and the personal email address from your Apple Account for you to review.

To edit your name, tap it, then use the **Keyboard** to make changes.

To specify an email address, do one of the following:

- *Use your personal email address:* Tap Share My Email.

If you have multiple email addresses associated with your Apple Account, choose the address you want.

- *Hide your email address:* Tap Hide My Email.

This option allows you to receive email from the app without sharing your personal email address. When you choose this option, Apple creates a unique, random email address for you, and any email sent from the app to this address is forwarded to your personal address.

After you review your information and choose an email option, tap Continue, authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model), then start using the app.

## Sign in to access your account

After you set up an account with a website or app using Sign in with Apple, you typically don't need to sign in to it again on your iPhone. But if you're asked to sign in (for example, after you sign out of an account), do the following:

1. Tap Sign in with Apple.
2. Review the Apple Account that appears, then tap Continue.
3. Authenticate with Face ID or Touch ID (depending on your model).

## Change the address used to forward email

If you chose to hide your email address when you created an account and you have more than one address associated with your Apple Account, you can change the address that receives your forwarded email.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security, then tap Forward To.
3. Choose a different email address, then tap .

## Review or change Sign in with Apple settings for apps

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign in with Apple.
3. To change a setting for an app, tap it, then do any of the following:
  - *Turn off forwarding email:* Tap Manage Hide My Email, tap the app, then turn off Forward To. You won't receive any further emails from the app.
  - *Stop using Sign in with Apple:* Tap Delete, then tap Stop Using. You may be asked to create a new account the next time you try to sign in to the app.

## Share your Sign in with Apple access

1. Go to the Passwords app .
2. Tap All, then locate and tap the account where you use Sign in with Apple.
3. Tap Group, then tap New Group.

4. Enter a name for the group, then tap **Add People**.
5. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap **Add**.

**Note:** To add someone to your group, they must be in your Contacts app and have a device using iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

6. Tap **○**.

Sign in with Apple also works on your other devices—iPad, Apple Watch, Mac, Apple TV, and iPod touch—where you're [signed in to the same Apple Account](#).

To sign in from an Android app, a Windows app, or any web browser, tap **Sign in with Apple**, then enter your Apple Account password.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [What is Sign in with Apple?](#).

## Share passwords and passkeys with people you trust on iPhone

Shared password groups are an easy and secure way to share passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials with your family and trusted contacts.

Anyone in the group can add passwords, passkeys, and Sign in with Apple credentials. When a shared credential changes, it changes on everyone's device.

### Create a group

**Note:** To create a shared password group, you must be signed in to your Apple Account.

1. Go to the **Passwords** app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap **○**.
3. Enter a name for the group, then tap **Add People**.
4. Type the name, email address, or phone number of the person or people you want to add, then tap **Add**.

**Note:** To add someone to your group, they must be in your contacts and have an iPhone, iPad, or Mac with iOS 17, iPadOS 17, macOS 14, or later. If they can be added to the group, their contact information appears in blue. If it appears in gray, their iPhone, iPad, or Mac might not support shared password groups.

5. Tap **○**.
6. Select the passwords you want to share with the group, then tap **Move** in the top-right corner.

If you don't want to share any passwords yet, tap **Not Now** in the top-left corner.

You can notify the people you've invited to the group, and they can also see the invitation in **Passwords > Group Invitations**.

Your shared passwords are saved in iCloud Keychain, and you can use them like any other saved password.

You receive a notification whenever anyone else is invited to the group.

If you create a group, you can add or remove other members, or delete the group. Other members of the group don't have these options, but they can choose to leave at any time.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the name of your group.

You can add or remove other members, or delete the group.

3. Do any of the following:

- *Add a member to the group:* Tap your name, then tap Add People.
- *Remove a member from the group:* Tap the member's name, then tap Remove From Group.
- *Remove a shared password or passkey from the group:* Tap Select, select the shared account with the shared password or passkey, then tap .
- *Delete the group:* Tap your name, then tap Delete Group.

4. When you're finished making changes, tap .

## Respond to an invitation to join a group

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap the invitation, then tap Accept to join the group. You can also decline the invitation.

**Important:** Don't accept an invitation if you don't recognize the sender.

# Automatically fill in strong passwords on iPhone

When you sign up for services on websites and in apps, you can let iPhone create strong passwords for many of your accounts.

iPhone stores the passwords in the Passwords app and fills them in for you automatically, so you don't have to memorize them.

**Note:** Instead of requiring you to sign in with passwords, participating websites and apps support these alternatives:

- *Sign in with Apple:* Lets you use your Apple Account to sign in, and limits the information shared about you. See [Sign in with Apple](#).
- *A passkey:* Lets you use Face ID or Touch ID to securely sign in without using a password. See [Use passkeys to sign in to websites and apps](#).

## Create a strong password for a new account

Depending on the website or app, creating a strong password and saving it to the Passwords app usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the new account screen for the website or app, enter a new account name.

For supported websites and apps, iPhone suggests a unique, complex password.

- *Choose the suggested password:* Tap Use Strong Password.
- *Edit the suggested password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, tap the password text field, then make your changes.
- *Get a different strong password:* Tap Other Options, tap Edit Strong Password, then tap the suggested password.
- *Get a strong password consisting of only numbers and letters:* Tap Other Options, then tap No Special Characters.
- *Get a strong password that's easy to type:* Tap Other Options, then tap Easy to Type.
- *Make up your own password:* Tap Other Options, then tap Choose My Own Password.

3. To copy the password so you can paste it into a Confirm Password field if asked, tap Other Options, then tap Copy Strong Password.

4. To **securely add and keep notes** about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details, enter them in the Notes field.

To view the notes later, go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone, tap All, then tap the account.

5. To later allow iPhone to automatically fill in the password for you, tap Yes when you're asked if you want to save the password.

## Automatically fill in a saved password

Depending on the website or app, signing in with your saved password usually consists of steps similar to these.

1. On the sign-in screen for the website or app, tap the account name field.

2. Do one of the following:

- Tap the account suggested at the bottom of the screen or near the top of the keyboard.
- Tap , tap Other Passwords, then tap an account.

The password is filled in. To see the password, tap .

To enter an account or password that isn't saved, tap  on the sign-in screen.

## Turn Password AutoFill on or off

Go to Settings  > General > AutoFill & Passwords, then turn on or off AutoFill Passwords and Passkeys.

You can automatically fill passwords from up to three password apps.

# See the websites you've excluded from automatically filling in passwords on iPhone

When you enter a password for a website, you're asked if you want the password saved and automatically entered in the future. You can see all the websites for which you've chosen to never save the password.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.

2. Tap Apps, then tap Passwords. Draft
3. Below Save Passwords, tap "Show excluded websites."

The list includes all websites for which you've opted not to save your password.

**Tip:** You can remove a website from the list. Swipe left on the website, or tap Remove All. The next time you enter your password for the website, you'll be asked if you want the password saved and automatically entered in the future.

## Change weak or compromised passwords on iPhone

When you create and store your own passwords for websites and apps, iPhone automatically identifies common weaknesses (for example, if they're easily guessed or used multiple times). iPhone can also securely monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

### Change a weak or compromised password

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.

If an account has a weak or compromised password, a message explains the problem.

3. Tap an account.
4. Tap the Password field, then tap Copy Password, so you can paste it where it's requested—for example, when you create a new password and you're asked to enter your old password.
5. Tap Change Password, then change your password on the website or in the app.

If the website or app allows you to use a passkey or to [upgrade to Sign in with Apple](#), you can take advantage of the security and convenience of those features. If you aren't given the upgrade option when you change your password, many accounts allow iPhone to [automatically create a strong password](#) that you don't have to remember.

**Note:** If iPhone warns you about a password for a website or app that's no longer available, you can remove its account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain. Go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, tap All, then swipe left on the account.

### Hide a security recommendation

You can hide a security recommendation so that you don't have to continue reviewing it if you're unable to address it.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Security.
3. Tap an account.
4. Tap Hide.

To show a security recommendation you've hidden, tap Security, tap  at the top of the screen, tap an account, then tap Unhide.

## Turn detection of compromised passwords on or off Draft

iPhone can monitor your passwords and alert you if they appear in known data leaks.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Passwords.
3. Turn Detect Compromised Passwords on or off.

## View your passwords and related information on iPhone

You can view and copy passwords, add notes like security question reminders, and more with the encrypted account information stored on iPhone. iCloud Keychain securely [keeps this information up to date](#) across all your approved devices.

### View and copy a password for a website or app account

1. For an account that uses a password, do one of the following:
  - [Ask Siri](#) something like, "Show me my passwords." [Learn how to use Siri](#).
  - Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
  - On a sign-in screen, tap .
2. Tap an account, then tap the Password field.
3. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Password.

### Add notes for an account with a password or passkey

You can securely keep notes about recovery key information, security questions, PIN numbers, and similar details.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit, tap Notes, enter your text, then tap .

To update the notes, tap Edit, then tap the Notes field.

### Go to the website for an account

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Do one of the following:
  - Tap .
  - Tap the website URL, tap Copy Website, then paste the URL into the address field of your browser.

### Remove an account from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.

2. Swipe left on the account, then tap **Delete**.

For example, you might want to remove the account for a website or app that's no longer available.

*Note:* This action doesn't remove the account from the website or app where you created it.

## Remove a password or passkey from your iPhone and iCloud Keychain

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap an account.
3. Tap Edit.
4. Tap Delete Password or Delete Passkey.

*Note:* This action doesn't remove the password or passkey from the website or app where you created it.

## View your password history for a website or app on iPhone

You can see the previous versions of a password, passkey, or verification code for a website or app, along with the dates they were changed. You can also clear the history of changes.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All.
3. Locate and tap the website or app account.
4. Tap View History.

To show the password, tap .

To remove the list of changes, tap Clear.

*Note:* For shared passwords, the history of changes isn't shown.

## Find and share your Wi-Fi password on iPhone

You can find the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using and see all the Wi-Fi networks and passwords you've previously saved. You can share the password of the Wi-Fi network you're currently using with a nearby friend or family member.

### Find a Wi-Fi password

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Wi-Fi.

If you're connected to a Wi-Fi network, its name appears at the top of the screen. You can also see all the Wi-Fi networks you've previously saved.

If you don't see Wi-Fi, tap Passwords to go to the Passwords Home Screen.

Draft

3. Tap a Wi-Fi network. Draft

4. Tap the Password field.

To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap [Copy Password](#).

## Share your Wi-Fi network password with a nearby friend or family member

1. Make sure your iPhone (the one sharing the password) is unlocked and connected to the Wi-Fi network.
2. Have your friend or family member go to Wi-Fi settings on their iPhone, iPad, or Mac, then choose the network.
3. When a message asks if you want to share your Wi-Fi password, tap [Share Password](#).

**Note:** To share your Wi-Fi network password devices must be within Bluetooth and Wi-Fi range, not using Personal Hotspot, and added to each other's contacts.

You can also go to the Wi-Fi network and tap [Show Network QR Code](#), which friends and family can scan to join the network.

## Share passwords and passkeys securely with AirDrop on iPhone

You can use AirDrop to securely share passwords and passkeys for website and app accounts with someone using an iPhone, iPad, or Mac.

**Note:** To show someone the password you saved for a Wi-Fi network, see [Find a Wi-Fi password](#).

### Check the AirDrop requirements

Compared to sharing other types of information, AirDrop has more stringent requirements for sharing passwords and passkeys.

- [iCloud Keychain must be set up](#) on your iPhone.
- The person you're sharing with [must be in your contacts list](#) in the Contacts app, and they must be listed with the email address they use for iCloud.
- You must be in the other person's contacts list in the Contacts app, and you must be listed with the email address you use for iCloud.

### Send a password or passkey

To share with someone on iPhone or iPad, ask them to open Control Center and [allow AirDrop to receive items](#). To share with someone on a Mac, ask them to allow themselves to be discovered in AirDrop in the Finder.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the account you want to share.
3. Tap , then tap Share with AirDrop.
4. Tap the device or picture of the person you want to send the password or passkey to.

### Receive a password or passkey

1. If you haven't already done so, [allow AirDrop to receive items](#).

2. When you receive a request to accept a password or passkey from someone else, tap Accept.

The password or passkey is saved to your iPhone, where you can [view its information](#) and let iPhone automatically fill it in on the sign-in screen for the account. The password or passkey is also saved to your iCloud Keychain, so you can use it on other devices where you're [signed in to your Apple Account](#).

## Make your passwords and passkeys available across devices with iPhone and iCloud Keychain

Use iCloud Keychain to keep your website and app passwords and passkeys, credit card information, Wi-Fi network information, and other account information up to date across all your approved devices and Mac computers. iCloud Keychain is secured with 256-bit AES encryption during storage and transmission, and its data can't be read by Apple.

iCloud Keychain can also keep the accounts you use in Mail, Contacts, Calendar, and Messages up to date across all your iPhone and iPad devices and Mac computers.

### Set up iCloud Keychain

If you didn't set up iCloud Keychain when you first set up your iPhone, you can do so now.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [\[your name\]](#), then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All (next to Saved to iCloud), then tap Passwords & Keychain.
4. Turn on Sync this iPhone, then follow the onscreen instructions.

### Set up iCloud Keychain on an additional device

When you turn on iCloud Keychain on an additional device, your other devices using iCloud Keychain receive a notification requesting your approval of the additional device.

On one of your other devices, approve the additional device. Your iCloud Keychain automatically begins updating on the additional device.

To approve iCloud Keychain when you don't have access to your other devices, follow the onscreen instructions to use your iCloud Security Code.

### Recover your iCloud Keychain if all your devices are lost or stolen

iCloud Keychain syncs across devices to provide convenience and redundancy in case you lose a single device. If all your devices are lost and you've [added a recovery contact](#) to your Apple Account, your contact can help you recover your iCloud Keychain. Go to Settings  > [\[your name\]](#) > Sign-In & Security, tap Recovery Contacts, then tap Learn More.

You can also recover your iCloud Keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, which is also protected against brute-force attacks. iCloud Keychain escrows a user's keychain data with Apple without allowing Apple to read the passwords and other data it contains. Your keychain is encrypted using a strong passcode, and the escrow service provides a copy of the keychain only if a strict set of conditions is met.

To recover your keychain through iCloud Keychain escrow, authenticate with your Apple Account on a new device, then respond to an SMS [sent to a trusted phone number](#). After you authenticate and respond, you must enter the device passcode. iOS, iPadOS, and macOS allow only 10 attempts to authenticate. After several failed attempts, the record is locked and you must contact Apple Support on the [Apple Support website](#) to be granted more attempts.

## Automatically fill in one-time verification codes on iPhone

Some websites and apps offer two-factor authentication (also known as *multifactor authentication*), which helps prevent other people from accessing your accounts even if they know your passwords. Passwords are the first authentication factor, and temporary, one-time verification codes are commonly a second factor. iPhone can automatically generate these verification codes without your reliance on SMS messages or additional apps.

### Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by scanning a QR code

If you have another device with a screen, like a computer or iPad, you can use it to display a QR code from a website or app, then use the iPhone camera to scan the code.

1. On your other device, sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.

A QR code appears to help you set up an authenticator app.

2. On iPhone, use the camera to [scan the QR code](#).
3. On iPhone, select your account for the website or app.

A verification code appears below the User Name and Password fields.

4. On your other device, enter the verification code that appears on your iPhone.

### Set up automatic verification codes for a website or app by entering a setup key

If you can't scan a QR code from another screen, you can manually enter a setup key.

1. Sign in to the area of the website or app where you manage your account, then select options to enable two-factor authentication and an authenticator app.
2. Choose the option to manually use a setup key (or setup code or similar), then [select and copy](#) the setup key.
3. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
4. Tap All, then tap your account for the website or app.
5. Tap Edit, then tap Set Up Code.

6. Visit the website to get a setup key, enter the setup key in Passwords, then tap Use Setup Key.

If the website offers a QR code, you can touch and hold it, then choose Add Verification in Passwords to do this automatically.

## Use a verification code on a website or in an app

1. Sign in to the website or app.
2. If prompted, select the option to use an authenticator app.
3. When asked for a verification code, tap the suggestion that appears above the keyboard.

If no suggestion appears, go to the Passwords app on your iPhone, select your account for the website or app, tap the verification code, then tap Copy Verification Code. Return to the website or app, then [paste](#) the verification code into the field.

## Automatically delete one-time verification codes

One-time verification codes are filled in automatically, so you don't need to leave the website or app you're signing in to. You can choose to automatically delete the verification codes after entering them with Autofill, or keep them.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap General, then tap Autofill & Passwords.
3. Under Verification Codes, turn Delete After Use on or off.

## Automatically fill in SMS passcodes on iPhone

When you sign in to some websites and apps, a one-time SMS passcode is sent to your iPhone. As a security measure, you're required to enter the code into the website or app. iPhone can detect the passcode in Messages and display it above the keyboard.

To use the passcode, tap it.

*Note:* With Continuity, all the SMS and MMS messages you send and receive on iPhone can also appear on your other iPhone, iPad, and iPod touch devices and your Mac. See the Apple Support article [Use Continuity to connect your Mac, iPhone, iPad, and Apple Watch](#).

## Sign in with fewer CAPTCHA challenges on iPhone

Some website and app sign-in screens require you to pass CAPTCHA challenges, such as recognizing letters in unusual shapes. iCloud allows you to bypass many challenges by automatically and privately verifying your iPhone and account. You can turn this bypass on or off.

1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Turn Automatic Verification on or off.

# Use two-factor authentication for your Apple Account on iPhone

Using two-factor authentication helps prevent others from accessing your [Apple Account](#) account, even if they know your Apple Account password. When it's on, you need both your Apple Account password and a six-digit verification code to [sign in to your Apple Account](#). The verification code is sent to the phone number associated with your Apple Account, or displayed on your trusted devices.

*Note:* Certain account types might not support two-factor authentication. Two-factor authentication isn't available in all countries or regions. See the Apple Support article [Availability of two-factor authentication for your Apple Account](#).

## Turn on two-factor authentication

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication.
4. Enter a *trusted phone number* (the number you'll use to receive verification codes), then tap Next.

A verification code is sent to your trusted phone number.

5. Enter the verification code on your iPhone.

Two-factor authentication is turned on for your Apple Account, and your iPhone is now a trusted device.

## Add another trusted device

After you turn on two-factor authentication on your iPhone, you can add other trusted devices to your Apple Account.

1. On the device you want to add, [sign in to the same Apple Account](#) you used to turn on two-factor authentication.
2. When prompted, enter the six-digit verification code that appears on your iPhone, another trusted device, a trusted phone number, or your Mac.
3. Enter the verification code on the new device.

You won't be asked for a verification code again unless you sign out completely, erase your device, sign in to your Apple Account page in a web browser, or need to change your Apple Account password for security reasons.

## Add or remove a trusted phone number

Adding trusted phone numbers can be useful if you want to use two-factor authentication but don't have access to the phone number you added when you turned it on.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication.

- *Add a number:* Tap Add a Trusted Phone Number, then enter the phone number.
- *Remove a number:* Tap  next to the phone number.

5. When you're finished making changes, tap Done.

Trusted phone numbers don't automatically receive verification codes. If you can't access any trusted devices when setting up a new device for two-factor authentication, tap "Didn't get a verification code?" on the new device, then choose one of your trusted phone numbers to receive the verification code.

## View or remove trusted devices

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap *[your name]*.

A list of the devices associated with your Apple Account appears near the bottom of the screen.

3. To remove a device, tap it, then tap Remove from Account.

If you remove a trusted device, it can no longer display verification codes and its access to iCloud (and other Apple services on the device) is blocked. To add it back, use two-factor authentication to [sign in to your Apple Account](#) again.

## Generate a password for an app that signs in to your Apple Account

To sign in to your Apple Account from a third-party app or service (such as an email, contacts, or calendar app) using two-factor authentication, generate an app-specific password.

1. [Sign in to your Apple Account](#).
2. Tap App-Specific Passwords, then tap "Generate an app-specific password."
3. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After you generate your app-specific password, enter or paste it into the password field of the app as you would normally.

For more information, see the Apple Support article [Sign in to apps with your Apple Account using app-specific passwords](#).

# Use security keys to sign in to your Apple Account on iPhone

Security Keys for your Apple Account is an optional security feature designed for people (such as celebrities, journalists, and members of government) who want extra protection from targeted attacks on their account, including phishing and social engineering scams.

A security key is a small third-party hardware device that you can connect to your iPhone and use to verify your identity when signing in to your Apple Account. The physical key replaces the six-digit verification codes normally used in two-factor authentication, which keeps this information from being intercepted or requested by an attacker.

Draft  
For details about security key requirements, see the Apple Support article [About security keys for your Apple Account](#).



## Set up security keys

You need to set up at least two security keys so you can use one of them as a backup in case the other one is lost, damaged, or stolen. You can pair up to six keys with your account.

1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Two-Factor Authentication, tap Security Keys, then tap Add Security Keys and follow the onscreen instructions.

## Sign in to a device, website, or app using a security key

1. When prompted, insert your security key (if it's an NFC key, hold or place it near the top of your iPhone).
2. Follow the onscreen instructions.

## Use a security key to reset your Apple Account password

If you forget your Apple Account password, you can use a security key that's paired with your account to reset it.

1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security. (If you aren't already signed in to your Apple Account on your iPhone, first use your paired security key to sign in.)
3. Tap Change Password, then follow the onscreen instructions.

## Use a security key to unlock your Apple Account

If you try unsuccessfully six times in a row to sign in to your Apple Account, or if your iPhone detects other signs of suspicious activity, you'll receive an onscreen notification that your Apple Account is locked. You can use your security key to unlock it.

1. Go to the Settings app 🛡 on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Unlock Account, then follow the onscreen instructions to unlock your Apple Account.

4. If you think your account might have been locked because someone else knows your password, tap Change Password and enter a new one.

5. Tap Done.

## Remove security keys

You can pair up to six security keys with your Apple Account. If you reach the limit and need to pair additional keys, you can remove one or more of your paired keys. You can replace keys you've removed at any time.

1. Go to the Settings app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap [your name], then tap Sign-In & Security.
3. Tap Security Keys.
4. To remove all keys, tap Remove All Keys, then tap Remove.

To remove individual keys, tap the ones you want to remove, then tap Remove Key.

*Note:* If you remove all security keys from a device, the device reverts to using six-digit verification codes for two-factor authentication.

## See the FileVault recovery key for your Mac in Passwords on iPhone

When you secure the data on your Mac with FileVault, you get a recovery key during setup. If you forget the password for your Mac, you can reset your forgotten password by entering the recovery key. You can see the recovery key in Passwords on your iPhone.

1. Go to the Passwords app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap All, then tap the name of your Mac in the list.
3. Tap the Recovery Key field.
4. To copy the password to use elsewhere, tap Copy Recovery Key.

*Note:* You can see the recovery key for your Mac in the Passwords app on your iPhone or iPad where you're signed in to the same Apple Account as your Mac.

## Import and export

### Import passwords from another password manager into Passwords on iPhone

You can import passwords that you've exported to a CSV file from another password manager.

**WARNING:** Your imported passwords might not be encrypted and could be visible to anyone who can access the file.



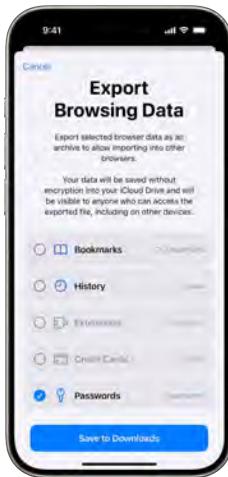
1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below History and Website Data, tap Import.
4. Tap Choose File, then choose the CSV file you exported from your other password manager.
5. Tap Import to Safari.
6. Tap Done.

**WARNING:** For security, delete the file you imported from.

## Export passwords to another password manager on iPhone

You can export your passwords for websites and accounts to a CSV file, and then import them into another password manager.

**WARNING:** Your exported passwords are not encrypted and are visible to anyone who can access the file. After you import the passwords into another password manager, delete the file you exported.



1. Go to the Settings app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Safari.
3. Below History and Website Data, tap Export.

4. Select Passwords.

Draft

Deselect the other choices.

5. Tap Save to Downloads.

6. Tap Done.

**Note:** You can't export Wi-Fi passwords, passwords that you shared with a group (unless you created the group), or Sign in with Apple account passwords.

## Phone

### Make a call on iPhone

There are a number of ways you can make a phone call on your iPhone: dial the number on the keypad, tap a favorite or recent call, or choose a number in your contacts list.



Dial a number

Ask Siri to call or dial a number. Speak each digit separately—for example, "four one five, five five five...." For the 800 area code in the U.S., you can say "eight hundred." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or without using Siri:

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.

Draft

2. Tap Keypad at the bottom of the screen, then do any of the following:

- *Use a different line:* On [models with Dual SIM](#), tap the line at the top, then choose a line.
- *Enter the number using the keypad:* If you make a mistake, tap .
- *Redial the last number:* Tap  to see the last number you dialed, then tap  to call that number.
- *Paste a number you've copied:* Tap the phone number field above the keypad, then tap Paste.
- *Enter a soft (2-second) pause:* Touch and hold the star (\*) key until a comma appears.
- *Enter a hard pause (to pause dialing until you tap the Dial button):* Touch and hold the pound (#) key until a semicolon appears.
- *Enter a "+" for international calls:* Touch and hold the "0" key until "+" appears.

3. Tap  to start the call.

To end the call, tap .

## Add a contact to your Favorites

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Edit in the top-left corner of the screen, then tap Add Favorite.
3. Tap a contact, then choose the default method of communication (for example, message, call, or video) and the preferred number.

To contact someone in your Favorites, tap their name.

To delete someone from your Favorites list, swipe their name all the way to the left.

## Redial or return a recent call

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents, then tap a name or number in the Recents list.  
The call begins as soon as you tap the name or number.
3. To get more info about a call and the caller, tap  next to the name or phone number in Recents.

## Call someone on your contacts list

Ask Siri something like "Call Eliza's mobile." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Contacts at the bottom of the screen.
3. Tap the contact, then tap the phone number you want to call.

On [models with Dual SIM](#), the default voice line is used for the call unless you set a preferred line for this contact.

**WARNING:** For important information about avoiding distractions that could lead to dangerous situations, see [Important safety information](#).

# Record and transcribe a call on iPhone

In some countries and regions, you can record a phone call when you're talking to one other person. In select regions and languages, you can view the transcript of the call in the Notes app. See the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).

*Note:* Call recording isn't currently available in Azerbaijan, Bahrain, Egypt, the European Union, Iran, Iraq, Jordan, Kuwait, Morocco, Nigeria, Oman, Pakistan, Qatar, Russia, Saudi Arabia, South Africa, Turkey, United Arab Emirates, and Yemen.

## Record a call

Before you begin, check the [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#) to see if call recording is available in your language and region, and make sure the other call participant is willing to be recorded.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Make a call.
3. During the call, tap , then tap Call Recording.

Both call participants hear an audio notice that the call is being recorded.

4. To stop recording, tap  or just hang up.

Call recordings are automatically saved to a Call Recordings folder in the Notes app.

5. To see the call in the Notes app, tap View Saved Call.

## Play a recorded call

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap .

## View a call transcript

In [select region and languages](#), you can view the transcript of a recorded call in the Notes app. The transcript may not be available immediately—you may see a message that the transcription is in progress.

*Note:* Verify the accuracy of a transcription before relying on it. It might not be a perfect representation of the conversation.

1. Go to the Notes app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, then tap .

*Note:* Spoken words in supported languages are automatically transcribed. If you don't see a transcript, your iPhone doesn't meet the minimum requirements or detect a supported language.

In the transcript, the speaker of each statement is identified.

3. While viewing the transcript, you Draft can do any of the following:

- *Play the audio from a specific point:* Select the text you want to hear.
- *Search the transcript:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Find in Transcript.
- *Copy the transcript:* Tap ⓘ, then choose Add Transcript to Note or Copy Transcript.
- *Save the audio recording:* Tap ⓘ, tap Save Audio Files, then select where you want to save the recording.
- *Share the audio recording:* Tap ⓘ, tap Share Audio, then select how you want to share the recording.
- *Delete the audio recording:* Tap ⓘ, then tap Delete.

*Note:* Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

- *View the waveform of the recording:* Tap ☐.

## Delete a recorded call

1. Go to the Notes app ☐ on your iPhone.
2. Tap a note in the Call Recordings folder, tap ⓘ, then tap Delete.

*Note:* Deleting the audio recording also deletes the transcript.

## Turn off Call Recording

Call Recording is on by default, but you can turn it off.

1. Go to the Settings ⓘ app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Recording, then turn off Call Recording.

# Change your Phone settings on iPhone

## Hide your Caller ID

You can prevent your Caller ID information from showing on outgoing calls on iPhone.

1. Go to the Settings ⓘ app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Show My Caller ID, then turn it off.

*Note:* If you don't see Show My Caller ID, your carrier may not allow you to turn off your caller ID information.

## Prioritize caller identification apps

There are multiple main sources of caller ID information:

- *Contacts app:* The people in your contacts app.
- *Name and Photo Sharing:* Callers who have turned on Name and Photo Sharing in Settings ⓘ > their name > Personal Information.
- *Carrier Call Directory:* Caller information identified by supported carriers.

- *Business Call Identification:* Caller information identified by Apple Business Connect or your cellular provider.
- *Call Identification apps:* Any caller information identified by supported caller ID apps.

If you have additional caller identification apps installed, you can prioritize them for identifying incoming calls and reorder them at any point. For example, you might want one caller identification app to be the preferred one and the others to come into play only if the primary app can't identify the caller.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Blocking & Identification, then tap Edit at the top of the screen.
4. Drag  to reorder the priority of the apps.

## Turn on Dial Assist

Dial assist automatically determines the correct international or local prefix when dialing.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Scroll down, then turn on Dial Assist.

# View and delete your call history on iPhone

You can view your call history on your iPhone and delete all your recent calls or just specific calls.

## Delete your call history

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Calls, Missed, or Spam.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Delete a call one at a time:* Swipe a call all the way to the left.
  - *Delete multiple calls:* Tap Edit, tap Select, tap the calls you want to delete, then tap Delete.

To recover a deleted call history, [restore your iPhone](#) from a backup you made before the data was deleted.

## Get more details about your call history

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap , then tap Calls or Missed.
3. Tap  next to a call to view information about the caller, and your call history with the caller.

*Note:* Your carrier may have more information about deleted calls or older call histories.

# Answer or decline incoming calls on iPhone

Draft

You can answer, silence, or decline an incoming call. If you decline a call, it goes to voicemail. You can also respond to a call with a text.

## Answer a call

Do one of the following:

- Tap .
- If your iPhone is locked, drag the slider.

**Tip:** You can have Siri [announce incoming calls](#), which you can accept or decline using your voice.

## Silence a call

Press the side button or either volume button when a call is coming in.

You can still answer a silenced call until it goes to voicemail.

## Decline a call and send it directly to voicemail

Do one of the following for an incoming call:

- Press the side button twice quickly.
- Tap .
- Swipe up on the call banner.

You can also tap the call banner for more options.

Do any of the following:

- Tap Voicemail to send the call to voicemail.
- Tap Message, then choose a default reply or tap Custom.

To create your own default replies, go to Settings  > Apps > Phone > Respond with Text, tap any field below Respond With, then type your own reply.

*Note:* In some countries or regions, declined calls are disconnected without being sent to voicemail.

iPhone can help you avoid unwanted calls by identifying callers, blocking certain people, screening unknown callers, or sending spam callers directly to voicemail. You can also filter out unknown callers so they don't appear in your recent and missed calls. To learn more, see [Block or avoid unwanted calls](#).

# While on a call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call on iPhone, you can switch the audio to the speaker or a Bluetooth® device.

## Adjust the audio during a call

To change the volume, press the volume buttons on the side of iPhone. Or swipe down on the call banner, then do any of the following:

- *Mute:* Tap the Mute button.
- *Put the call on hold:* Touch and hold the Mute button.
- *Talk handsfree:* Tap the Audio button, then choose an audio destination.

1. [Go to the Home Screen](#), then open the app.
2. To return to the call, tap the green call indicator at the top of the screen.

## Use Hold Assist

When you're placed on hold during a call, you can use Hold Assist to notify you when a live agent is available so you don't have to stay on the line.

*Note:* Hold Assist isn't available in all countries or regions.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. When you're in a call and put on hold, tap More, then tap Hold Assist.
3. Hold Assist will notify you when an agent is available and transcribe the part of the call you missed. Tap  to rejoin the call.

*Note:* Phone can also automatically detect when you are put on hold and notify you when it's time to pick up. Go to Settings  > Apps > Phone, then turn on Detect Call Waiting.

## Respond to a second call on the same line

If you're on a call and receive a second call, do one of the following:

- *Ignore the call and send it to voicemail:* Tap Send to Voicemail.
- *Respond to the second call with a text message:* Tap Message.
- *Set a reminder to return the call:* Tap Remind Me, then choose when you want a reminder to return the call.
- *End the first call and answer the new one:* When using a GSM network, tap End & Accept. With a CDMA network, tap End; when the second call rings back, tap Accept, or drag the slider if iPhone is locked.
- *Put the first call on hold and answer the new one:* Tap Hold & Accept.

To switch between calls when you have a call on hold, tap Swap to switch between calls, or tap Merge Calls to talk with both parties at once. See [Start a conference or three-way call](#).

*Note:* With CDMA, you can't switch between calls if the second call was outgoing, but you can merge the calls. You can't merge calls if the second call was incoming. If you end the second call or the merged call, both calls end.

On [models with Dual SIM](#), note the following:

- Wi-Fi Calling must be turned on for a line to enable that line to receive calls while the other line is in use for a call. If you receive a call on one line while the other is in use for a call, and no Wi-Fi connection is available, iPhone uses the cellular data of the line that's in use for the call to receive the other line's call. Charges may apply. The line that's in use for the call must be permitted for data use in your Cellular Data settings (either as the default line, or as the non-default line with Allow Cellular Data Switching turned on) to receive the other line's call.

- If you don't turn on Wi-Fi Calling for ~~Draft~~ line, any incoming phone calls on that line (including calls from emergency services) go directly to voicemail (if available from your carrier) when the other line is in use; you won't receive missed call notifications.

If you set up conditional call forwarding (if available from your carrier) from one line to another when a line is busy or not in service, the calls don't go to voicemail; contact your carrier for setup information.

## Share screens during a phone call on iPhone

While using the Phone app  on an iPhone that meets [minimum system requirements](#), you can share your screen or ask to see someone else's screen. In supported apps, you can also use SharePlay to watch the latest episode of a show or listen to a new song with friends in real time.

### Share your screen or see another person's screen

You can share your screen during a phone call to bring apps, webpages, and more into a call. You can also ask to see someone else's screen, or even remotely control it.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. During a call with just one other person, tap More, then tap Screen Sharing.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Share your screen:* Tap Share My Screen. To learn more, see [Share your screen](#).
  - *See the other person's screen:* Tap Ask to Share Screen. To learn more about how to remotely control someone's screen, see [Request remote control](#).

A countdown from 3 to 1 appears on the screen before screen sharing begins.

**Tip:** During a one-to-one phone call, a participant who is using an iPhone or iPad can tap, draw, or write on your screen to call your attention to a specific area. The circle, drawing, or writing disappears after a few seconds.

To stop sharing your screen, tap More, then tap Stop next to Screen Sharing. Ending a call also ends screen sharing.

### Use SharePlay to enjoy content together

With SharePlay in the Phone app, you can stream TV shows, movies, and music in sync with friend and family while on a call together. Shared playback controls keep everyone in sync.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. During a call, tap More, then tap SharePlay.
3. Tap the supported app (like Apple Music or Apple TV), then find the show, movie, song, or other content you want to share.

#### 4. Tap Start or Play to begin using SharePlay.

For everyone who has access to the content, the content starts playing at the same time.

*Note:* If the shared content requires a subscription, the service may ask those who don't have access to subscribe, make a transaction, or sign up for a free trial, if available.

#### 5. To stop sharing the content, go to the call screen, tap More, then tap the Stop button next to SharePlay.

The music or video also stops when you end the call.

Each person in the conversation can use the playback controls to play, pause, rewind, or fast-forward for everyone, but settings like closed-captioning and volume are controlled separately by each person.

**Tip:** After the video starts playing, you can stream it to Apple TV. See [Send what you're watching in SharePlay to Apple TV](#).

## Have a conference or three-way call on iPhone

When you're on a phone call, you can add an additional caller or callers if you want to include more people in the conversation. If you get another incoming call, you can also respond to or ignore it.

### Start a conference or three-way call

With GSM, you can set up a conference call with up to five people (depending on your carrier).

*Note:* Conference calls, or some aspects of conference calling, may not be available if your call is using VoLTE (Voice over LTE) or Wi-Fi Calling.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. While on a call on iPhone, tap More, tap Add People, make another call, then tap Merge Calls.

Repeat this step to add more people to the call.

3. During the call, do any of the following:
  - *Talk privately with one person:* Tap  next to the name of the person. Tap Merge Calls to resume the conference call.
  - *Add an incoming caller on the same line:* Tap Hold Call & Answer, then tap Merge Calls.
  - *Drop one person:* Tap  next to the name of the person you want to drop, then tap End.

## Set up your voicemail on iPhone

In the Phone app, Visual Voicemail and Live Voicemail show a list of your messages. You can choose which ones to play and delete without listening to all of them. A badge on the Voicemail icon indicates the number of unheard messages.

**Draft** Voicemail transcription shows your messages transcribed into text. To view a transcribed voicemail, tap Voicemail in the Phone app, then tap the voicemail.

**Note:** Voicemail and Visual Voicemail are available from select carriers in select countries or regions.

## Set up voicemail

The first time you tap Voicemail, you're asked to create a voicemail password and record your voicemail greeting.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Voicemail, then tap Set Up Now.
3. Create a voicemail password.
4. Choose a greeting—Default or Custom; if you choose Custom, you can record a new greeting.

## Turn on Live Voicemail

Live Voicemail lets you automatically see a real-time transcription as someone is leaving you a message. You can even pick up the call as they're leaving their voicemail.

To turn on Live Voicemail, do the following:

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Turn on Live Voicemail.

When Live Voicemail is on and a caller is sent to voicemail, your iPhone displays a transcription of the caller's voicemail as they speak. (Calling and data rates may apply.) The caller won't be able to hear you and you won't be able to hear them unless you choose to answer the call. To stop the incoming voicemail without answering or blocking the call, tap Stop.

If your iPhone is turned off or is out of your carrier network's range, the call is sent to carrier voicemail, if available.

If you have Silence Unknown Callers turned on, unknown numbers go directly to Live Voicemail without ringing you first. Calls identified as spam by your carrier don't go through Live Voicemail and are instead instantly declined.

**Note:** Live Voicemail isn't available in every region or language. See [iOS and iPadOS Feature Availability website](#).



**Draft**

You can store and sync your Live Voicemail and Carrier Voicemail in iCloud.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap your name, then tap iCloud.
3. Tap See All next to Saved to iCloud, then turn on Phone & FaceTime.

## Check your voicemail on iPhone

Use the Phone app to listen to, delete, or share your voicemail messages. You can also check your voicemail messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available.

### Play, share, or delete a voicemail message

Say something like, "Play the voicemail from Eliza." [Learn how to use Siri](#).

Or do the following:

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Voicemail, then tap a message.
3. Do any of the following:
  - *Play the message:* Tap ►.

Messages are saved until you delete them (or until your carrier erases them, if they're not stored in iCloud).

- *Share the message:* Tap .
- *Delete the message:* Tap .

**Important:** In some countries or regions, deleted messages may be permanently erased by your carrier. Your voice messages may also be deleted if you change your SIM card.

To recover a deleted message, tap Deleted Messages, tap the message, then tap .

### Check your messages when Visual Voicemail isn't available

- *On your iPhone:* Tap Voicemail, then follow the instructions.
- *On another phone:* Dial your own mobile number, press \* or # (depending on your carrier) to bypass your greeting, then enter your voicemail password.

## Change your voicemail greeting and settings on iPhone

You can change your voicemail greeting, password, and alert sounds.

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.

2. Do any of the following to change Draft your voicemail settings:

- *Change your greeting:* Tap Voicemail, tap Greeting, tap Custom, then tap Record (not supported by all carriers or in all countries and regions).
- *Change your voicemail password:* Go to Settings  > Apps > Phone > Change Voicemail Password, then enter the new password.  
If you forgot your voicemail password, contact your wireless carrier.
- *Change the alert for new voicemail:* Go to Settings  > Sounds & Haptics, then tap New Voicemail.

**Note:** To change your Contact Photo & Poster, see [Add or edit your photo and poster](#).

## Select ringtones and vibrations on iPhone

You can set the default ringtone and assign distinctive ringtones to certain people. You can also use vibrations and turn the ringer off.

### Change the alert tones and vibrations

iPhone comes with ringtones that play for incoming calls. You can also [purchase more ringtones in the iTunes Store](#).

You can change the sounds iPhone plays when you get a call, text, voicemail, email, reminder, or other type of notification.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Sounds & Haptics.
3. To set the volume for all sounds, drag the slider below Ringtone and Alerts.
4. Tap Haptics, then choose the haptics behavior for ringtones and alerts—Always Play, Play in Silent Mode, Don't Play in Silent Mode, or Never Play.
5. Tap Ringtone or Text Tone.

Ringtones play for incoming calls, clock alarms, and the clock timer; text tones are used for text messages, new voicemail, and other alerts.

6. At the top of the Ringtone or Text Tone screen, tap Haptics, then do any of the following:
  - Choose a tone (scroll to see them all).
  - Choose a vibration pattern or tap Create New Vibration to create your own.

See [Change sounds and vibrations](#).

### Assign a different ringtone to a contact

1. Open the Contacts app  on your iPhone.
2. Select a contact, tap Edit, tap Ringtone, then choose a ringtone.

### Turn the ringer on or off

- On [supported models](#): Open [Control Center](#), then tap  Draft.

You can also configure the Action Button to turn the ringer on or off. See [Customize the Action button](#).

- On other models: Flip the Ring/Silent switch to turn Silent mode on or off.

Clock alarms still play when Silent mode is turned on.

To temporarily silence incoming calls, [turn on or schedule a Focus on iPhone](#).

## Make calls using Wi-Fi on iPhone

When your iPhone has a low cellular signal, use Wi-Fi Calling to make and receive calls through a Wi-Fi network.

1. Go to the [Settings](#)  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Cellular](#), then—if your iPhone has a dual SIM—choose a line (below SIMs).
3. Tap [Wi-Fi Calling](#), then turn on [Wi-Fi Calling on This iPhone](#).
4. Enter or confirm your address for emergency services.

*Note:* Emergency calls on your iPhone are routed through cellular service when available. In the event that cellular service isn't available, and you have enabled Wi-Fi Calling, emergency calls may be made over Wi-Fi, and your device's location information may be used for emergency calls to aid response efforts, regardless of whether you enable Location Services. Some carriers may use the address you registered with the carrier when signing up for Wi-Fi Calling as your location. When connected to Wi-Fi calling, your iPhone may not receive emergency alerts.

When Wi-Fi Calling is available, "Wi-Fi" is displayed after your carrier name in the [status bar](#), and all your calls go through Wi-Fi.

*Note:* If the Wi-Fi connection is lost when you make calls, calls switch automatically to your carrier's cellular network using VoLTE (Voice over LTE), if available and turned on. See [View or change cellular data settings](#). (VoLTE calls also switch to Wi-Fi when a Wi-Fi connection becomes available.) Contact your carrier for feature availability.

## Set up call forwarding on iPhone

You can set up call forwarding on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call forwarding.

1. Go to the [Settings](#)  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap [Apps](#), then tap [Phone](#).
3. Tap [Call Forwarding](#), then turn on [Call Forwarding](#).

The Call Forwarding icon  appears in the [status bar](#) when call forwarding is on.

4. On [models with Dual SIM](#), choose a line.
5. Tap [Forward To](#), enter the number you want to redirect to, then tap [Back](#).

You must be in range of the cellular network when you set iPhone to forward calls, or calls won't be forwarded.

If your carrier supports conditional call forwarding when the line is busy or not in service, contact them for setup information.

## Set up call waiting on iPhone

You can set up call waiting on iPhone if you have cellular service through a GSM network.

If you have cellular service through a CDMA network, contact your carrier for information about setting up call waiting.

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Call Waiting, then turn on Call Waiting.

If you're on a call and call waiting is turned off, incoming calls go directly to voicemail.

On models with Dual SIM, call waiting works only for incoming calls on the same line, unless the other line has Wi-Fi Calling turned on and a data connection is available. See [Set up cellular service](#).

## Block or avoid unwanted calls on iPhone

On iPhone you can block specific callers and you can change your setting to automatically identify, screen, filter, and block unknown and spam calls.

### Identify, screen, filter, and block unknown and spam calls

1. Go to the Settings  app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Turn on the following:
  - *Screen Incoming Calls*: iPhone automatically answers calls from unsaved numbers without interrupting you. Once the caller shares their name and reason for their call, your phone rings and you can decide if you want to pick up.

*Note:* When answering calls, Siri will speak in your iPhone's default language. See [Change the language and region](#).

- *Move to Unknown Callers*: This silences calls and voicemails from unknown callers, and sends them to the Unknown Callers list.
- *Silence Spam Callers*: Calls identified by your carrier as potential spam or fraud are silenced and automatically sent to voicemail.

4. Tap Call Blocking & Identification, then turn on Business Call Identification and any other call identification apps listed.

### Block calls from specific people or numbers

1. Go to the Phone app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Favorites, Recents, or Voicemail.

3. Tap ⓘ next to the number or contact you want to block, scroll down, then tap Block Caller.

## Unblock a blocked contact

1. Go to the Settings ⓘ app on your iPhone.
2. Tap Apps, then tap Phone.
3. Tap Blocked Contacts, then tap Edit.
4. Tap ⓘ, then tap Unblock.

## View calls from unknown or spam callers

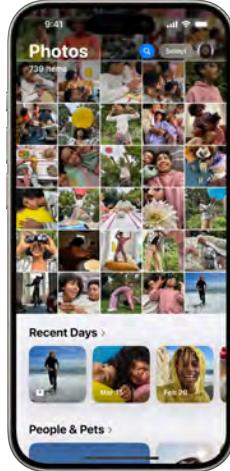
1. Go to the Phone app 📞 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Recents at the bottom of your screen.
3. Tap ⓘ in the top-right corner of your screen.
4. Tap Unknown Callers or Spam.

# Photos

## Get started with Photos on iPhone

Use Photos 📸 on your iPhone to find your photos, enjoy your memories, and share your best shots. Here's how to get started.

### Browse your photos



To get started viewing your photos and videos, go to the Photos app. Tap Library to browse all your photos and videos in one place, or tap Collections to view your photos and videos organized into meaningful collections.

### Enjoy your memories

Draft



Relive your favorite memories with personalized collections of photos and videos that are set to music and play like a movie. Tap Collections, tap Memories, then tap a memory. Each memory features photos from your library curated around a theme —like a person, pet, place, event, or activity.

## Edit your photos

To make your photos stand out, adjust light and color, crop, rotate, add a filter, and more. Open a photo or video, then tap  to start editing.



## Share your photos



Draft

Open a photo or video, tap  Draft, then choose a sharing option like Mail, Messages, or AirDrop. To share all the photos and videos in a collection, tap  Share.

Want to learn more?

- [Browse your photo library](#)
- [Browse your photo collections on iPhone](#)
- [Play memories](#)
- [Share photos and videos](#)
- [Edit photos and videos](#)

## Browse your photo library on iPhone

Browse the library in the Photos app to view your entire collection of photos and videos.



View your library

1. Open the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Make sure the Library tab is selected in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe down to see more photos, or tap Years or Months at the bottom of the screen to go to a specific time in your library.

**Tip:** While you're viewing the library, pinch the screen to zoom in or out.

### Change the library display

You can change the size and appearance of the photo thumbnails in the library photo grid, and manage the content displayed in your library.

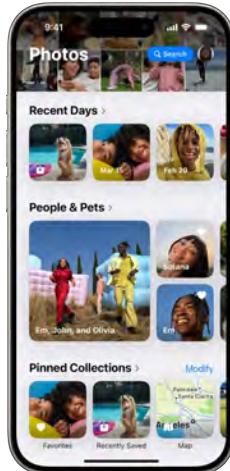
1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library in the bottom-left corner of the screen.
3. Tap , then tap View Options.

- *Enlarge the size of the photo and video thumbnails:* Tap Zoom In.
- *Reduce the size of the photo and video thumbnails, to see more at the same time:* Tap Zoom Out.
- *View each photo or video thumbnail in the dimension it was captured in:* Tap Aspect Ratio Grid. To return to square thumbnails, tap Square Photo Grid.
- *Hide screenshots:* Tap Screenshots.
- *Hide photos shared with you in Messages:* Tap Shared with You.

To make more customizations to the content shown in your photo library, see [Filter and sort the photo library](#).

## Browse your photo collections on iPhone

Your photos and videos are organized into curated collections such as Memories, Favorites, People & Pets, and more.



### View your collections

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Make sure the Collections tab is selected in the bottom-left corner.
3. Swipe up to view the collections.

Under each collection heading, swipe left or right to see different collections. Or, tap the heading to see all the collections in that category.

4. Tap a collection to open it.

### Change the collections display

Collections can be viewed with larger or smaller image tiles, or without any images at all. You can also change the order collections appear on the screen.

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.

3. Tap  at the top of the screen, then do any of the following:

- *Enlarge the size of the collection tiles:* Tap <ICON TO COME>.
- *Reduce the size of the collection tiles:* Tap <ICON TO COME>.
- *Hide the collection tiles:* Tap Collapse All.
- *Change the collection order:* Tap Customize, touch and drag a collection into a new position, then tap Done.

**Tip:** If you want to hide the image tiles for a single collection, tap <ICON TO COME>. Tap <ICON TO COME> to stop hiding them.

## Reorder collections

You can change the order of collections so the ones you go to most frequently appear first. For example, if you frequently view your Shared Albums, you can move them above other collections.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Scroll to the bottom of the screen, tap Reorder, then drag a collection into a new position.
4. Tap Done.

## Pin collections and albums

You can choose which collections and albums appear below the Pinned heading at the top of the screen. Pin the collections and albums you view most often, so they're easy to find.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections in the bottom-left corner.
3. Tap Edit (to the right of the Pinned heading), then do any of the following:
  - *Remove a pinned collection:* Tap , then tap Delete.
  - *Pin a collection:* Tap the suggested collection you want to add, or scroll down and tap Any Collection or Album to see more options.
  - *Reorder pinned collections:* Touch and hold a pinned collection, then drag it to a new position.

*Note:* Collections with  next to them are currently in your pinned collections. Collections with  next to them are not yet pinned.

4. When you're done, tap .

# View photos and videos on iPhone

Use the Photos app to view photos and videos on your iPhone.

## View photos



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Tap a photo to view it in full screen.

**Tip:** Tap then move your iPhone in your hand to view the photo with a 3D effect (available on iPhone 12 and later).

3. Tap to close the photo.

## Play videos



1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Tap a video to play it.

3. Tap to close the video.

## See photo and video information on iPhone

You can find saved metadata information about a photo or video in the Photos app. You can also change certain stored data such as the date, time, and location.

### View photo and video metadata

1. Go to the Photos app on your iPhone.

2. Tap the photo or video whose <sup>Draft</sup> metadata you want to see, then swipe up or tap ⓘ.

Depending on the photo or video, you see the following details:

- People and pets identified in the photo (see [Find and name people and pets](#))
- A caption field to describe the photo or video, and make it easier to find in Search
- Items detected by [Visual Look Up](#)
- Event information <LINK TO COME>
- What device captured the photo or video
- The date and time the photo or video was taken (tap **Adjust** to edit the date and time)
- Camera metadata such as lens, shutter speed, file size, and more
- Where the photo or video was taken (tap the link to view the location in Maps; tap **Adjust** to edit the location; tap “Add a location” to enter a location)
- What albums the photo is in (tap to open the album)



3. Swipe down or tap ⓘ to close.

## Change the date, time, or location of a photo or video

1. Go to the Photos app 📸 on your iPhone.
2. Tap a photo or video to open it, then tap ⓘ.
3. Tap **Adjust Date & Time** or **Adjust Location**.
  - For date and time changes, use the calendar and clock to update, then tap **Adjust**.
  - For location changes, enter where the photo was taken in the text field, then tap the location when it appears under **Map Locations**.

To change the date, time, or location of a batch of photos, tap **Select**, tap the thumbnails you want to change, then follow the steps above.

To revert a photo or video to its original date, time, or location, tap ⓘ, tap **Adjust Date & Time** or **Adjust Location**, then tap **Revert**.

## Find your photos and videos

## Find photos and videos by date on iPhone

You can find and browse the photos and videos taken on a particular date—year, month, or day.

### View photos and videos you took on a recent day

You can find the photos and videos you took on a particular day in the Recent Days collection.



1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then scroll down to Recent Days.
3. Swipe left or right to quickly move between days, or tap Recent Days to view all.
4. Tap a day to open the collection.

When you open a day in Recent Days, you see a summary of the best photos from the day. To see all the photos you took that day, tap Show All.

### Browse through your library by year or month

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Library, swipe down on the photo grid, then tap one of the following:
  - *Years*: Quickly locate a specific year in your photo library.
  - *Months*: View collections of photos that you took throughout a month, organized by significant events—like a family outing, social occasion, birthday party, or trip.

Years and Months views are curated to show your best shots, and visual clutter like similar photos, screenshots, whiteboards, and receipts aren't shown. To see every photo and video, tap All.

You can also search for a specific date. See [Search for photos and videos](#).

## Find and name people and pets in Photos on iPhone

The Photos app sorts photos and videos of people, dogs, and cats in the People & Pets collection (or the People collection if no pets appear). You can name a person, dog, or cat directly from a photo or video in your photo library, or in People & Pets.

## Name a person or pet in a photo or video

When you name a person or pet in a photo or video, they're automatically added to the People & Pets collection and named in other photos and videos in your library.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Open a photo or video, then swipe up to see the details.

People or pets in the photo or video appear in the bottom-left corner. A question mark appears next to those you haven't named.

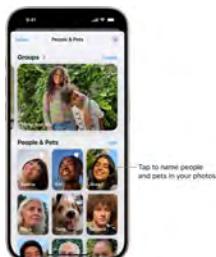
3. Tap the person or pet with a question mark next to their picture, then tap **Edit Name and Photos**.



4. Tap **Name This Person** or **Name This Pet**, enter their name, then tap **Done**.

## Name a person or pet in the People & Pets collection

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet you want to name.



3. Tap **Name This Person** or **Name This Pet**, then enter their name.

If the person is listed in your contacts, you can tap their name below **Results**.

4. Tap **Done**.

If the person or pet you want to name doesn't appear, tap **Add People** at the bottom of the People & Pets collection to see more faces.

To create a collection of a group of people and pets, see [Find group photos](#).

## Change the key photo for a person or pet

You can change the key photo of a person or pet in the People & Pets collection.

Draft

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the key photo you want to change.
3. Tap Edit Name and Photos, then tap the photo icon in the bottom-right corner of the current key photo.
4. Select a new photo from the choices in the photo grid, then tap Done.

## Mark a person or pet as a favorite

Mark the people or pets that you interact with the most as favorites so it's easier to find them in the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, then tap People & Pets.
3. Touch and hold a person or pet's key photo, then tap Favorite.

To remove a person or pet from your favorites, touch and hold their key photo in People & Pets, then tap Unfavorite.

## Fix incorrect names

You can fix misidentifications in the People & Pets collection.

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then tap the person or pet with the incorrect name.
3. Do one of the following:
  - *Rename a person or pet in a collection:* Tap , then tap the name at the top of the menu. Tap the name again, enter the correct name, then tap Done.
  - *Rename a person or pet in a specific photo or video:* Tap the photo or video to view it in full screen. Tap , tap This is Not [name], then tap Rename This Person or Rename This Pet.

You can also fix misidentifications while viewing a photo or video in your library.

Swipe up to see the photo or video information. Tap the misidentified person or pet in the circle at the bottom-left corner. Tap This is Not [name], then tap Rename This Person or Rename This Pet.

## Sort People & Pets alphabetically or manually

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, tap Sort, then choose one of the following:
  - *Sort alphabetically:* Tap Sort by Name.
  - *Sort manually:* Tap Sort by Custom Order, then touch and hold a key photo and drag it to a new position.

## Remove a person or pet

1. Go to the Photos app  on your iPhone.
2. Tap Collections, tap People & Pets, then touch and hold the person or pet you want to remove.